

Update Information 2010 Update Number 2

This package updates the *Subject Headings Manual*, 2008 edition, which was published in 2009. All new instruction sheets and replacement pages in 2010 Update Number 2 are dated August 2010. The table that follows lists the pages included in this package and summarizes the nature of the updates. Users who wish to maintain a permanent record of the history of the additions and changes listed here should file this table behind the **Update Information** tab in Volume 4 of the manual.

With this update, the manual is current through the end of August 2010. 2011 Update Number 1 is scheduled to be published in Spring 2011.

Note: This update package cannot be used with the *Subject Cataloging Manual: Subject Headings*, 5th edition, originally published in 1996. That edition is closed, and is no longer being updated. These update sheets are compatible only with the 2008 edition of the *Subject Headings Manual*.

<i>Instruction Sheet</i>	<i>Page</i>	<i>Addition/Change</i>	<i>Action</i>
H 170	2	Reference updated in sec. 4	Replace
H 175	1	Background statement added	Replace
H 178	1	New instruction sheet	Add
H 180	1-8	Terminology updated	Replace
H 193.5	2	Text updated in sec. 2	Replace
H 202	2	Examples updated	Replace
H 306	2	Example updated	Replace
H 370	6	Formatting error corrected	Replace
H 928	3	Example updated	Replace
H 987	2	Examples updated	Replace
H 1090	2	Example deleted in Background statement	Replace
H 1095	5-61	List updated	Replace pp. 5-59; add pp. 60-61

Update Information

2010 Update Number 2

<i>Instruction Sheet</i>	<i>Page</i>	<i>Addition/Change</i>	<i>Action</i>
H 1100	1-4	Text added to Background statement; list updated	Replace
H 1105	1-7	List updated	Replace
H 1110	5-26	List updated	Replace pp. 5-24; add pp. 25-26
H 1140	1-13	List updated	Replace
H 1147	1-12	List updated	Replace
H 1150	1-4	List updated	Replace
H 1151	1-3	List updated	Replace
H 1154	1-13	List updated	Replace
H 1156	3-8	List updated	Replace
H 1158	3-5	List updated	Replace
H 1160	7-9	List updated	Replace
H 1180	1-10	List updated	Replace
H 1195	3-6	List updated	Replace
H 1223	1	Example updated	Replace
H 1334	9-13	Sec. 5 rewritten	Replace
H 1475	1-6	Instruction sheet rewritten	Replace
H 1558	4	Reference updated in sec. 5	Replace
H 1678	1-3	Sec. 2-3 changed to sec. 2.a.-2.b; new section 3 added	Replace pp. 1-2; add p. 3
H 1690	1-3	" <i>DETERMINING WHETHER A WORK IS JUVENILE</i> " added; sec. 5-6 rewritten; sec. 7-8 deleted	Replace
H 1855	11-12	Example updated	Replace
Glossary	1	Example updated	Replace

Update Information 2010 Update Number 2

<i>Instruction Sheet</i>	<i>Page</i>	<i>Addition/Change</i>	<i>Action</i>
Appendix F	1-4	New instruction sheet	Add
Appendix G	1-2	New instruction sheet	Add
Index	1-98	Text updated	Replace pp. 1-96; add pp. 97-98

BACKGROUND: *The core level record standard for books was defined in 1993 by a Task Group appointed by the Cooperative Cataloging Council, now known as the Program for Cooperative Cataloging (PCC). Subsequently, core record standards were developed for graphic materials, moving image materials, music and non-music sound recordings, nonroman script materials, printed music and music manuscripts, rare books, and serials. The standards are designed to be used within the context of the Program for Cooperative Cataloging's national cataloging program, BIBCO, and to support the goals of the program to provide timely, cost-effective cataloging that meets commonly accepted standards. The idea behind the standards is to state a level of cataloging that will increase the pool of catalog records available for common use.*

Core level cataloging contains a complement of data elements judged sufficient to provide an acceptable level of access to materials. Because it includes classification and subject headings, the complement is substantially more complete than that for minimal level cataloging, but less complete than that for full level cataloging. Core level cataloging essentially calls for fewer notes, fewer subject headings, and fewer added entries than full level. In applying the core level standard, emphasis is placed on cataloger's judgment, with the flexibility to add elements when deemed appropriate or necessary for identification or access.

The Library of Congress conducted an experiment in applying the core level standard to bibliographic records in a broad range of languages and classes of books, music scores, and sound recordings from May to October 1996. In May 1997, the Library announced adoption of the core level standard as LC's base level of cataloging in the Cataloging Directorate and Serial Record Division. By the end of 1998, all teams in the Cataloging Directorate and Serial Record Division had implemented the core level standard.

LC cataloging teams have the discretion to catalog materials at a higher level than core if a team can do so and meet its commitment to arrearage reduction. Materials having reference assignments receive full level or full level equivalent copy cataloging.

LC core level records contain a set of data elements judged appropriate to the LC environment. They are identified by a combination of encoding level of "4" in the Leader/17 and the value "pcc" in the 042. Records may be identified as core even if only one aspect (descriptive or subject) reflects "coreness."

This instruction sheet provides general guidelines for assigning subject headings to LC core level records for all types of materials, as well as special instructions for JACKPHY catalog records and music recordings.

H 170 Core Level Records

1. General guidelines. If appropriate, assign at least one or two headings from the subject authority file and/or the name authority file to represent the primary subject and/or form of the work at the appropriate level of specificity. Assign headings to provide access to the essential subject focus of the work. This focus should generally correspond to the meaning of the assigned class number.

Concentrating on the primary or essential subject focus of a work means that secondary or tertiary subjects will normally not be represented in the assigned subject headings of a core level record, even if they constitute at least 20% of an item (cf. H 180 sec. 1). Multiple headings may be needed to represent a compound or multi-element topic for which a single heading neither exists nor can practically be constructed or established (cf. H 180 sec. 10). Multiple headings may also be needed in situations where reciprocal headings are used, for example, **[place 1]– Foreign relations–[place 2]** and **[place 2]–Foreign relations–[place 1]**, or where a standard array of headings is prescribed, for example, on biographies (cf. H 1330).

For the headings that are assigned, follow the conventions applied to full level cataloging. For example, where appropriate, subdivide main headings by topical, geographic, chronological, and/or form subdivisions to bring out those aspects of the primary subject (cf. H 180 sec. 16).

Assign headings at the level of specificity appropriate to the work (cf. H 180 sec. 4). Establish new headings for discrete topics and named entities as they are needed.

2. JACKPHY catalog records. Do not assign a paired nonroman script field for 600, 610, 611, 630, 651 except in cases of problematic romanization or in cases in which such a field supports ready identification of a person or entity.

3. Music recordings. Assign from the subject authority file one to three subject headings at the appropriate level of specificity. A recording of three major classical works, for example, may receive up to three headings. If more than three works are involved, assign one to three broader headings as necessary if no essential information will be lost. Otherwise, assign the minimum number of headings necessary to provide essential information.

4. Geographic area codes or GACs (043). Assign geographic area codes, if readily ascertainable, following the instructions in Appendix E.

BACKGROUND: This instruction sheet provides Library of Congress catalogers with policy guidelines for assigning subject headings to an edition or a translation of a work when another edition of the same work has already been cataloged by the Library. It replaces parts of D 450, an instruction sheet that was formerly in the **Subject Cataloging Manual: General Cataloging Procedures**. For information on classifying editions, see F 175. For information on shelflisting editions, see G 145

LC practice:

1. General rule. Assign the same subject heading or set of subject headings to all editions of a single work that are present in the LC database and that have an imprint date of 1981 or later.

Exception: If the content of a new edition of a work changes so significantly that its scope and focus are entirely different from earlier editions, assign the headings required to designate properly the contents of the edition being cataloged regardless of the headings assigned to the other edition(s). If the variation in content is slight, however, assign the same heading(s) to all post-1980 editions.

LC practice:

2. Changing subject headings on earlier editions. When a decision is made to assign different headings to a new edition from those assigned to the earlier edition(s) for reasons other than those described as exceptions above, change the headings of all other editions of the work in the LC Database that have an imprint date of 1981 or later, so that they match those assigned to the new edition.

Follow the procedures described in H 165 for the correction of subject headings in existing bibliographic records.

Do not change the headings on editions having an imprint date earlier than 1981.

BACKGROUND: *This instruction sheet provides Library of Congress catalogers with policy guidelines for assigning subject headings to serials. For information on classifying serials, see F 210.*

1. General rule. Assign a full set of subject headings in accordance with normal guidelines. Choose headings that characterize the scope and intent of the serial as a whole, not headings that would be appropriate only for the content of the specific issue(s) at hand.

2. Serials linked to previously cataloged serials. Assign appropriate and valid subject headings without regard to the headings assigned to previously cataloged serials that are linked to the new serial, even if the numbering continues from one to another. The subject headings that were assigned to the previously cataloged serial may be corrected or updated if necessary, but the headings assigned to the earlier and later serials need not be exactly the same.

3. The subdivision ~~-Periodicals~~. Use the form subdivision **-Periodicals** according to the guidelines provided in H 1927.

Assigning and Constructing Subject Headings H 180

BACKGROUND: *This instruction sheet contains general practices followed by the Library of Congress for assigning subject headings to individual works being cataloged and for constructing subject heading strings in the Library of Congress subject heading system. This instruction sheet begins after the initial steps of subject analysis have taken place, that is, after an examination of the item to determine its subject focus and an identification of how that basic subject is expressed with the controlled vocabulary of the Library of Congress subject heading system.*

1. General rule. Assign to the work being cataloged one or more subject headings that best summarize the overall contents of the work and provide access to its most important topics.

LC practice:

Assign headings only for topics that comprise at least 20% of the work.

In the case of a work containing separate parts, for example, a narrative text plus an extensive bibliography or a section of maps (cf. H 1865), or a book with accompanying materials, such as a computer disc, assign separate headings for the individual parts or materials if they constitute at least 20% of the item and are judged to be significant.

Note: There are certain works to which the Library of Congress assigns no subject headings because of their very general or amorphous nature, for example, a general periodical or a collection of essays with no discernable theme. In addition, it is Library of Congress practice not to assign subject headings to texts of sacred works or to individual works of belles lettres with no identifiable theme or specific form (cf. H 1775 sec. 3.c.).

2. Cataloging treatment. Assign subject headings that correspond to the cataloging treatment of the work. For example, to a record that represents a collected set, such as a periodical, monographic series, or multi-part item, assign headings that characterize the general contents of the set as a whole. To a record that represents an analytic in a collected set, assign headings that represent the specific contents of the analytic item.

To a work that contains both text and commentary, assign headings to represent either the text or the commentary depending upon the descriptive treatment of the item (cf. H 1435).

H 180 Assigning and Constructing Subject Headings

2. *Cataloging treatment.* (Continued)

Assign headings based on an analysis of the contents of the work being cataloged. Subject headings do not need to be justified by descriptive cataloging notes.

3. *Number of headings.* The number of headings that are required varies with the work being cataloged. Sometimes one heading is sufficient. Generally a maximum of six is appropriate. In special situations more headings may be required.

LC practice:

Do not assign more than ten headings to a work.

Note: As many as ten Children's Subject Headings (formerly called Annotated Card Program (AC) headings) may be assigned to a juvenile work in addition to the assigned Library of Congress subject headings.

If more than one heading is present, Library of Congress catalogers assign them in order of predominance. See H 80 for instructions on order of headings.

4. *Specificity.* Assign headings that are as specific as the topics they cover. Specificity is not a property of a given subject heading; instead, it is a relative concept that reflects the relationship between a subject heading and the work to which it is applied. For example, a seemingly broad heading like **Psychology** is specific when it is assigned to an introductory textbook on psychology. The method through which specificity is achieved depends on the nature of the available headings. In many cases, specificity can be achieved by assigning a basic heading consisting of one word or a phrase; in other cases, specificity can be achieved by subdividing a heading. See sec. 15 below for a discussion of the construction of subject headings.

Follow the hierarchical reference structure built into the subject authority file (cf. H 370) to find as close a match as possible between the topic of the work and the headings that exist to express that topic in the Library of Congress subject heading system. In situations where a needed heading is neither established in the subject authority file nor able to be constructed using free-floating elements, see H 187 for general guidelines on establishing new subject headings.

Assigning and Constructing Subject Headings H 180

4. *Specificity.* (Continued)

Assign a heading that is broader or more general than the topic that it is intended to cover only when it is not possible to establish a precise heading, when an array of headings is needed to express the topic, or when the assignment of a more general heading is called for by special instructions in the *Subject Headings Manual*. For example, H 1334 and H 1334.5 contain instructions to add a heading of the type [*city*]-**Buildings, structures, etc.** to works that discuss an individual named building or a category of buildings in a city from the architectural standpoint.

5. *Depth of indexing.* A given heading, depending upon its place in a hierarchy, may subsume several subtopics that are also represented by headings in the subject authority file. Assign to a work only the headings that most closely correspond to the overall coverage of the work. Do not assign headings that represent the subtopics normally considered to be included in an assigned heading's coverage. *Example:*

Title: *Beginning gymnastics.*
650 #0 \$a Gymnastics.

*[Do not assign separate headings for parallel bars, balance beam, horizontal beam, vaulting horse, tumbling, etc., instead of, or in addition to, **Gymnastics.**]*

6. *General topic and subtopic; principle vs. specific case.* If a work discusses a general topic with emphasis on a particular subtopic, or presents a principle and illustrates the principle with a specific case or example, assign headings for both the general topic or principle and for the subtopic or specific case or example, provided that the treatment of the latter forms at least 20% of the work. *Example:*

Title: *Revolutions yesterday and today.*
[A survey of revolutions with emphasis on the Cuban Revolution of 1959]
650 #0 \$a Revolutions \$x History.
651 #0 \$a Cuba \$x History \$y Revolution, 1959.

H 180 Assigning and Constructing Subject Headings

7. Two or three related headings. If a heading exists, or can be established, that represents the two or three topics discussed in a work, and that includes no other topics within its scope, assign the one heading instead of two or three narrower headings. *Examples:*

Title: By land, sea, and air : the story of transportation.
650 #0 \$a Transportation \$x History.

Title: In praise of single parents : mothers and fathers embracing the challenge.
650 #0 \$a Single parents \$z United States.

[*not* 650 #0 \$a Single mothers \$z United States.
650 #0 \$a Single fathers \$z United States.]

8. Rule of three. If a general topic includes in its scope more than three subtopics, but the work being cataloged discusses only two or three of these subtopics, assign the appropriate two or three headings rather than the broader heading. *Example:*

Title: South Carolina fruit tree survey, 1975 : peaches-apples.
650 #0 \$a Peach \$z South Carolina \$v Statistics.
650 #0 \$a Apples \$z South Carolina \$v Statistics.

If more than three of the subtopics are discussed in the work, assign the broad heading instead, unless the rule of four, described below, applies.

9. Rule of four. In certain circumstances it may be preferable to assign headings for four subtopics of a broad concept. If a heading covers a broad range and each subtopic forms only a small portion of that whole range, assign the four subtopics instead. For example, for a discussion of the works of four American literary authors, a heading for each author may be assigned since the heading **American literature--History and criticism** covers the works of all American authors.

LC practice:

Do not exceed four subtopics under any circumstances.

Assigning and Constructing Subject Headings H 180

10. Multi-element topics. If a work discusses a complex or compound topic for which a single heading neither exists nor can be practically constructed or established, assign multiple headings to bring out the separate aspects of the topic. *Example:*

Title: Cancer morbidity and mortality among Danish brewery workers.

650 #0 \$a Cancer \$z Denmark.

650 #0 \$a Cancer \$x Mortality \$z Denmark.

650 #0 \$a Brewery workers \$x Diseases \$z Denmark.

650 #0 \$a Brewery workers \$x Mortality \$z Denmark.

In some cases, patterns in the subject authority file call for assigning a combination of headings that together are coextensive with the topic. *Example:*

Title: Lipid metabolism in ruminant animals.

650 #0 \$a Ruminants \$x Metabolism.

650 #0 \$a Lipids \$x Metabolism.

11. Additional aspects. In the headings assigned to a work, bring out important additional aspects, such as limitation to a specific place or time, focus on specific named entities, and presentation in a particular form. These aspects may be expressed by means of headings themselves, adjectival qualifiers in headings, or subdivisions. See sec. 16 below for a discussion of complete subject heading strings with subdivisions.

a. Place. Geographic features and jurisdictions can play a key role in the contents of a work in terms of location, setting, derivation, or origin, and need to be reflected in the assigned headings. See H 690 - H 910 for instruction sheets on geographic headings and subdivisions, and H 320 and H 350 for guidelines on national adjectival qualifiers in subject headings.

b. Time. Express the chronological aspects significant to the contents of the work in situations where the Library of Congress subject heading system allows it. See H 620 for a discussion of chronological headings and subdivisions.

H 180 Assigning and Constructing Subject Headings

11. *Additional aspects.* (Continued)

c. Named entities. Assign headings from either the name authority file or subject authority file for individual persons, families, corporate bodies, projects, events, buildings, named products, uniform titles, etc., that are significant to the contents of the work. Assign headings of this type when these named entities are critical to the subject of the work as a whole, even if discussion of them does not form 20% of the work. See H 430 for instructions on assigning name headings as subjects and H 405 for a discussion of which file to consult to find authority records for ambiguous named entities.

d. Form. Assign form headings and subdivisions to represent what the item itself is, that is, its format or the particular type or arrangement of data that it contains, in situations where headings or subdivisions for these types of materials exist, and it is Library of Congress practice to designate them. Consult the instruction sheets for particular types of materials in the *Subject Headings Manual*, for example, dictionaries (H 1540); genealogy (H 1631); illustrations (H 1659); juvenile materials (H 1690); software (H 2070); treaties (H 2227).

12. Concepts in titles. Titles and subtitles are important because they sometimes state in the words of the author or publisher the subject matter of the work. Bring out or account for each topic of subject retrieval value that is identified in the title or subtitle and discussed in the work. Apply judgment and consider the following points when applying this principle:

- If the title is misleading, euphemistic, or cryptic, do not use the title as a guide to the contents of the work.
- If the topic is one that as a matter of policy is not expressed in subject headings, do not bring out this aspect in the assigned subject headings. For example, do not assign specific headings to reflect a narrow time period in the history of a village. Instead, apply a general free-floating century subdivision (cf. H 620, sec. 3.d.(1)).
- If the title is general but the work is actually on a more specific topic, assign heading(s) for the specific topic.
- If many topics are listed on the title page in the manner of a table of contents, treat them as a table of contents.

Assigning and Constructing Subject Headings H 180

13. Additional headings. Because of the complex nature of certain topics, or special practices that have been developed for particular topics, additional headings may be required. Consult the appropriate instruction sheets in the *Subject Headings Manual* or scope notes in the subject authority file for guidance on handling these situations. For example, special provisions exist for works on foreign relations (H 1629); folklore (H 1627); public opinion (H 1955); biography (H 1330); local history and genealogical source materials (H 1845); and other special topics.

14. Objectivity. Avoid assigning headings that label topics or express personal value judgments regarding topics or materials. Individual cataloger knowledge and judgment inevitably play a role in assessing what is significant in a work's contents, but headings should not be assigned that reflect a cataloger's opinion about the contents. Consider the intent of the author or publisher and, if possible, assign headings for this orientation without being judgmental. Follow stated intentions of the author or publisher in such matters as readership, audience level, treatment as fact or fiction, etc.

15. Constructing headings. Subject headings may be in the form of a word, a phrase, or a name, all assigned with or without subdivisions. *Examples:*

- Simple nouns: **Children; Dogs; Libraries**
- Compound nouns: **Bioengineering; Electrometallurgy**
- Nouns with parenthetical qualifiers: **Seals (Animals); Crack (Drug)**
- Nouns with adjectives: **Gifted children; Wild dogs; Academic libraries; Sculpture, American; Science, Ancient**
- Phrases with prepositions: **Teachers of gifted children; Photography of dogs; Photocopying services in libraries**

H 180 Assigning and Constructing Subject Headings

15. *Constructing headings.*

Examples: (Continued)

- Compound phrases: **Children and animals; Bolts and nuts; Comic strips, books, etc.**
- Complex phrases: **Names carved on trees; Infants switched at birth; Monkeys as aids for people with disabilities**
- Topical, name, or form/genre headings with subdivisions: **Taxation–Effect of inflation on; United States–Civilization–African American influences; Woodwind trios (Bassoon, clarinet, flute)–Scores and parts**

There is no general rule for correlating elements of compound topics when establishing precoordinated headings. New headings are usually formulated following precedents and patterns that exist in a particular discipline or field of knowledge. See H 290 - H 360 for instructions on formulating headings of certain types. Whenever it is feasible, consistency in form and structure among similar headings is achieved through the use of recurring patterns. For example, see H 1580 and H 1675 for instructions involving headings for effect and influence of one topic on another.

16. *Complete subject heading strings with subdivisions.* Each subject heading assigned to a work should be in the form of a complete string composed of a number of prescribed elements of which headings established in the subject authority file represent only a part. In many cases, it is not sufficient to select an individual heading or heading-subdivision combination from the subject authority file. As appropriate, supply additional elements to represent subtopic, place, time, and form in accordance with instructions in the subject authority file and the *Subject Headings Manual*. Consult H 1075 for general instructions on subdivisions, including the four types of subdivisions and the prescribed orders for combining them in meaningful subject heading strings. Assign subdivisions to reflect the contents of the work without regard to the size of the file under the basic heading.

Deleted Heading Information H 193.5

BACKGROUND: When a subject authority record is deleted under the guidelines given in H 193, sec. 16, a note explaining the reason for the deletion is provided for the benefit of subscribers to the subject authorities tape distribution service. This explanation is given in a 682 field that appears on the weekly list and is distributed with the deleted record. This instruction sheet provides the standard wording that is used in 682 fields.

1. Cancellation of Library of Congress subject headings. When submitting a proposal to delete a subject authority record for a Library of Congress subject heading, add a 682 field with the appropriate note selected from the list that follows. If none of these explanations is appropriate for the case in hand, compose an original note that provides a clear explanation of why the record is being deleted. The Data Integrity Section will edit the note as necessary to standardize the wording.

682 ## \$i This authority record has been deleted because the subject heading is covered by an identical name heading (n XXXXXXXX).

682 ## \$i This authority record has been deleted because the subject heading is covered by the name heading \$a _____ \$i (n XXXXXXXX).

682 ## ‡i This authority record has been deleted because the subject heading is covered by the name headings \$a _____ \$i (n XXXXXXXX) and \$a _____ \$i (n XXXXXXXX).

682 ## \$i This authority record has been deleted because the heading is covered by an identical subject heading (sh XXXXXXXX).

682 ## \$i This authority record has been deleted because the heading is covered by the subject heading \$a _____ ‡i (sh XXXXXXXX).

682 ## \$i This authority record has been deleted because the heading is covered by the subject headings \$a _____ \$i (sh XXXXXXXX) and \$a _____ \$i (sh XXXXXXXX).

H 193.5 Deleted Heading Information

1. *Cancellation of Library of Congress subject headings.* (Continued)

682 ## \$i This authority record has been deleted because the heading is replaced by headings of the type [topic]--[place] for which individual subject authority records are not made.

682 ## \$i This authority record has been deleted because the heading is replaced by the heading \$a [. . .]--[. . .], \$i a heading for which a subject authority record is not made because it uses a free-floating subdivision.

682 ## \$i This authority record has been deleted because the heading is replaced by headings of the type \$a [. . .]--[. . .] \$i for which individual subject authority records are not made.

682 ## \$i This authority record has been deleted because the subdivision \$a _____ \$i is no longer valid.

682 ## \$i This authority record has been deleted because the heading will be established as a name heading when needed.

682 ## \$i This authority record has been deleted because the heading is not a valid AACR2 heading.

2. *Cancellation of Children's (formerly called AC) subject headings.* When submitting a proposal to delete a subject authority record for a Children's subject heading, add one of the following 682 fields, as appropriate.

682 ## \$i This authority record for a Children's subject heading has been deleted because the heading is covered by an identical Library of Congress subject heading (sh XXXXXXXX).

682 ## \$i This authority record for a Children's subject heading has been deleted because the heading is covered by the Library of Congress subject heading \$a _____ \$i (sh XXXXXXXX).

Authority Research for Subject Heading Proposals H 202

BACKGROUND: *Proposed subject headings and their associated "used for" references should reflect both the terminology used in current literature on the topic in question, and the system of language, construction, and style used in **Library of Congress Subject Headings**. The purpose of doing authority research and listing the sources consulted in the 670 (Sources found) and 675 (Sources not found) fields of the subject authority record is either to demonstrate the form(s) in which the term being proposed as a heading has been found in existing literature, or to document the fact that no citation to the term can be found in any likely sources except the work being cataloged. The information recorded in the authority record serves as a record of how the cataloger decided on the terminology selected for the heading and UF references. In addition, definitions of terms that are not readily available elsewhere, information on the intended scope and usage of the proposed heading, its relationship to, and distinction from, similar existing headings, and any peculiarities or other pertinent information about the heading are recorded here. This information is used to guide the proposal through the editorial approval process. The online subject authority record serves as a permanent record for future reference and consultation.*

There are three categories of authority information to be recorded in the 670, 675, and 952 (Cataloger's permanent note) fields of the authority record: (1) Citation of LC pattern, (2) Citation of sources consulted, and (3) Other information pertinent to the choice of terminology or the meaning of the heading. All subject heading proposals must include one or more of these categories of information.

1. Citation of LC pattern. Cite a relevant and analogous existing LC heading as the pattern in a 952 field for any of the following types of new subject heading proposals:

- Proposal to add a new qualifier to a heading already analogously qualified.

For example, cite a heading such as **Art, French** as the pattern for a proposal to establish a heading such as **Art, German**.

*Note: When establishing headings of this type, a pattern should be cited to demonstrate that the basic heading has been analogously qualified before. In the case of relatively unusual adjectives, another pattern should be cited to demonstrate that the form being used as the qualifier has been used in the subject authority file before. For example, for a proposal to establish the heading **Propaganda, Zimbabwean**, cite a heading such as **Propaganda, West German** to demonstrate that the heading **Propaganda** has been qualified by nationalities and a heading such as **Poets, Zimbabwean** to demonstrate that the adjective **Zimbabwean** has been used before.*

H 202 Authority Research for Subject Heading Proposals

1. Citation of LC pattern. (Continued)

- Proposal to establish a non-free-floating subdivision under a heading for which an analogous pattern of usage exists.

For example, cite a heading such as **Rangelands–Monitoring** as the pattern for a proposal to establish a heading such as **Coral reefs and islands–Monitoring**.

- Proposal to establish a heading always constructed according to a standard pattern, such as "and" headings (cf. H 310), "in" headings, **Cooking ([topic])**, **Advertising–[topic]**, etc.
- Proposal to establish a heading using a parenthetical qualifier that has been used after other headings (cf. H 357).

For example, cite a heading such as **Signal theory (Telecommunication)** as the pattern for a proposal to establish a heading such as **Data compression (Telecommunication)**.

Note: The citation of a pattern in this situation serves only to justify the choice of the qualifier. The proposal must be supported by additional authority work to justify the choice of terminology and form of the substantive portion of the heading.

- Proposal to establish a heading for topical use when the same heading already exists as a genre/form heading.

For example, cite the genre/form heading **Buddy films** [tag 155] as the pattern for a proposal to establish the analogous topical heading **Buddy films** [tag 150].

- Proposal to establish a heading for genre/form use when the same heading already exists as a topical heading

For example, cite the topical heading **Monster films** [tag 150] as the pattern for a proposal to establish the analogous genre/form heading **Monster films** [tag 155].

Natural Language in Topical Subject Headings H 306

BACKGROUND: *In the past many subject headings were established in inverted form, for example, **Chemistry, Analytic; Insurance, Health; Bridges, Concrete**. In 1983 a decision was made to create most new headings in direct form using natural language. The inverted form was retained for topical or form headings qualified by languages, nationalities, and ethnic groups. Since 1983 the number and types of headings established in inverted form have been gradually reduced. This instruction sheet provides guidelines for formulating new topical or form headings in direct or inverted form, but is not intended to prescribe every type of heading or situation.*

1. Natural language headings. Except for those headings covered by sec. 2, establish new topical or form headings in straight form, using natural language, even if similar headings previously established are inverted. *Examples:*

	150 ## \$a Older women
[not	150 ## \$a Women, Older]
	150 ## \$a Agricultural chemistry
[not	150 ## \$a Chemistry, Agricultural]
	150 ## \$a Anonymous art
[not	150 ## \$a Art, Anonymous]
	150 ## \$a Deaf bus drivers
[not	150 ## \$a Bus drivers, Deaf]

Apply the above rule also to headings qualified by adjectives indicating religion (including the adjectives **Jewish** and **Islamic**), Christian denomination, or monastic or religious order. *Examples:*

150 ## \$a Catholic hospitals
150 ## \$a Hindu cave temples
150 ## \$a Jewish day schools
150 ## \$a Benedictine art
150 ## \$a Coptic embroidery
150 ## \$a Islamic jewelry

H 306 Natural Language in Topical Subject Headings

2. *Inverted headings.*

a. Language, nationality, or ethnic group qualifiers. Establish topical or form headings qualified by languages, nationalities, or ethnic groups in inverted form.
Examples:

```
150 ## $a Art, French
150 ## $a Cooking, Chinese
150 ## $a National characteristics, Argentine
150 ## $a Poets, Kannada
150 ## $a Revolutionary poetry, Bulgarian
150 ## $a Songs, Greek (Modern)
```

Exceptions:

(1) Language and literature headings. The following language, literary, and related headings are established in normal word order. Literary forms not on this list are established in inverted order.

```
150 ## $a [...] diaries
150 ## $a [...] drama
150 ## $a [...] drama (Comedy)
150 ## $a [...] drama (Tragedy)
150 ## $a [...] drama (Tragicomedy)
150 ## $a [...] essays
150 ## $a [...] farces
150 ## $a [...] fiction
150 ## $a [...] imprints
150 ## $a [...] language
150 ## $a [...] letters
150 ## $a [...] literature
150 ## $a [...] newspapers
150 ## $a [...] periodicals
150 ## $a [...] philology
150 ## $a [...] poetry
150 ## $a [...] prose literature
150 ## $a [...] wit and humor
150 ## $a [...] wit and humor, Pictorial
```


Broader Terms, Narrower Terms, and Related Terms H 370

1. *Hierarchical references.* (Continued)

b. Number of references to be made. Most single-concept headings belong to only one hierarchy and require only one BT. Some headings may incorporate more than one concept in more than one hierarchy and require additional BTs, but rarely more than three.

Link a new heading only to the *next broader* heading in the logical hierarchy by means of a BT. *Example:*

Automobiles
BT Motor vehicles

[not Automobiles
BT Motor vehicles
BT Vehicles]

If a new heading is a member of more than one hierarchy, link it to the next broader heading in each hierarchy. *Example:*

Women college administrators
BT College administrators
BT Women executives
BT Women in education

c. Establishing headings to fill hierarchical "gaps". When establishing a new heading, establish also the next broader heading to use as a BT, if it has not already been established.

Follow this rule in situations where the missing heading comes readily to mind or becomes apparent after checking dictionaries, other thesauri, etc. These situations are generally fairly obvious in the sciences, but less obvious in the humanities and social sciences.

H 370 Broader Terms, Narrower Terms, and Related Terms

1. Hierarchical references. (Continued)

d. Revising existing reference structures. When establishing a new heading that is an intermediate term in a hierarchy, add the new heading as a BT to the authority records for all existing narrower headings, and delete any BTs that link the existing headings to headings broader than the newly-established intermediate term. *Example:*

When the heading **Specialty stores** was established with the BT **Stores, Retail**, BT references were also made to the existing headings **Jewelry stores** and **Museum stores**. The BTs linking the latter headings directly to **Stores, Retail** were cancelled, resulting in the following hierarchy:

Specialty stores BT Stores, Retail	<i>[The hierarchy before Specialty stores was established had been:</i>
Jewelry stores BT Specialty stores	<i>Jewelry stores BT Stores, Retail</i>
Museum stores BT Specialty stores	<i>Museum stores BT Stores, Retail]</i>

e. Complex situations. Many subject headings incorporate more than one concept, and therefore do not generally lend themselves to strict hierarchical reference treatment. These include headings modified by prepositional or conjunctive phrases, headings constructed with subdivisions, and headings with certain parenthetical additions. As a general rule, when establishing a new heading of this type, make a BT from the generic heading for the term that is the second element in the heading even though the reference may not be truly hierarchical. *Example:*

Hydrogen as fuel
BT Fuel

4. Congolese as an adjectival qualifier. When establishing a subject heading qualified by the adjective form **Congolese** add the designation **(Brazzaville)** or **(Democratic Republic)** to refer to the appropriate country. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Congolese (Brazzaville) literature
150 ## $a Congolese (Democratic Republic) literature
150 ## $a Congolese (Brazzaville) fiction (French)
150 ## $a Congolese (Democratic Republic) literature (French)
150 ## $a Arts, Congolese (Brazzaville)
150 ## $a Civics, Congolese (Democratic Republic)
150 ## $a Cooking, Congolese (Democratic Republic)
150 ## $a Diplomatic and consular service, Congolese (Brazzaville)
150 ## $a Komo (Congolese (Democratic Republic) people)
150 ## $a Kipimpi (Congolese (Democratic Republic) mythology)
```

5. Geographic area codes. Use the code **f-cf** for **Congo (Brazzaville)** and **f-cg** for **Congo (Democratic Republic)**.

BACKGROUND: *This instruction sheet provides guidelines on the assignment of the headings **Malaysia** and **Malaya** as subjects, as well as the usage of the adjectives **Malay**, **Malayan**, and **Malaysian** in subject headings. Prior to 2003, the usage of these adjectives was inconsistent in LCSH. In April 2003, usage of the adjectives was standardized as described in this instruction sheet, and established headings that did not conform to this usage were changed to follow these guidelines.*

1. Malaysia. Assign **Malaysia** as a subject heading or geographic subdivision to works about the country formed by the merger in 1963 of the Federation of Malaya, Sabah (formerly called North Borneo), and Sarawak. From 1963-1965, Singapore was also a part of Malaysia. In 1965, Singapore separated and became an independent country, and is therefore now outside the scope of this instruction sheet.

*Note: When establishing subject headings for entities located in Malaysia, use the appropriate state, not (**Malaysia**) as the geographic qualifier, as described in H 810, sec. 1.a.(1). A list of the Malaysian states and the forms to be used as geographic qualifiers is provided in H 810 on the pages immediately following sec. 4.*

2. Malaya. Assign **Malaya** as a subject heading for works on the Federation of Malaya prior to its merger into Malaysia in 1963 as well as for works on the former Federated Malay States and on the former Malayan Union.

Also use **Malaya** as a subject heading for works on the mainland portion of Malaysia, sometimes called Peninsular Malaysia, West Malaysia, or Malaysia Barat.

As a geographic subdivision, use **Malaya** indirectly through **Malaysia**.

3. Malay.

a. Language qualifier. For headings qualified by languages, use **Malay** as an adjectival qualifier to refer specifically to the Malay language. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Malay literature
150 ## $a Malay wit and humor
150 ## $a Folk literature, Malay
```

H 987 Malaysia and Malaya

3. *Malay.* (Continued)

b. Ethnic group qualifier. For headings qualified by ethnic groups, use **Malay** to refer to the Malay people. *Examples:*

150 ## \$a Cosmology, Malay
150 ## \$a Magic, Malay

4. *Malayan.*

a. Language qualifier. For headings qualified by languages, use **Malayan** as an adjectival qualifier to refer to the Malayan languages collectively. *Examples:*

150 ## \$a Malayan drama
150 ## \$a Folk literature, Malayan

b. Nationality qualifier. For headings qualified by nationalities, use **Malayan** as an adjectival qualifier to refer to the Federation of Malaya prior to its becoming a part of Malaysia in 1963. *Example:*

150 ## \$a Coins, Malayan

*Note: Establish headings using **Malayan** as a national qualifier only for topics where the history or political situation is significant for the topic. The heading **Coins, Malayan** is valid because the national coinage changed when Malaya ceased to be a country in its own right and became a part of Malaysia. However, headings such as **Cooking, Malayan** or **Atlases, Malayan** should not be established because the historical and political situation has no bearing on these topics.*

5. Malaysian. For headings qualified by nationalities, use **Malaysian** as an adjectival qualifier to refer to country of Malaysia. *Examples:*

150 ## \$a Malaysian literature
150 ## \$a Arts, Malaysian
150 ## \$a Cooking, Malaysian

Multiple Subdivisions H 1090

BACKGROUND: A "multiple" subdivision is a subdivision in the subject authority file that incorporates bracketed terms, generally followed by the word *etc.* This device is used to suggest the creation of similar subdivisions under the heading in question. The presence of a multiple subdivision under a heading in the subject authority file automatically gives free-floating status to analogous subdivisions under the same heading, and, if the heading is a pattern heading, under those headings that it controls. Examples:

World War, 1939-1945–Personal narratives, American, [French, German, etc.]
Jesus Christ–Views on Jewish dietary laws, [Views on Jewish law, etc.]
Subject headings–Aeronautics, [Education, Latin America, Law, etc.]
Abortion–Religious aspects–Buddhism, [Christianity, etc.]
Names, Personal–Scottish, [Spanish, Welsh, etc.]

Some subdivisions used under name headings, though not actually established under any heading in the subject authority file, also function as multiple subdivisions, in that not only the subdivision itself, but also the bracketed element, may be assigned on a free-floating basis. Examples:

[name of person]–Inauguration, [date]
[name of corporate body]–Fire, [date]
[place]–Foreign public opinion, British, [French, Italian, etc.]

The equivalent of a multiple subdivision appears in some instances in the subject authority file in the form of an instructional scope note that allows for free-floating subdivision of the heading as described and illustrated in the note. Example:

Solar eclipses
Subdivided by date, e.g. Solar eclipses–1854.

This instruction sheet describes the procedures for establishing multiple subdivisions under subject headings and for assigning headings under which such subdivisions have been established.

For specific instructions on multiple subdivisions for religions and religious denominations, see H 1998 and H 2015.

H 1090 Multiple Subdivisions

BACKGROUND: (Continued)

*Note: The subject authority file previously included main headings incorporating bracketed terms followed by the word **etc.**, for example, **Coins, Arab, [Austrian, French, etc.]**. These were called "multiple headings" and served to suggest the creation of similar headings. Until 1981, individual headings controlled by a multiple heading were not printed in **Library of Congress Subject Headings** and were therefore not represented by individual authority records in the subject authority file. That practice was discontinued with the introduction of AACR2 in 1981. Individual authority records were then created for each heading that was needed for AACR2 cataloging that would formerly have been authorized by the the authority record for a multiple heading. In 1990 all multiple headings were deleted from the subject authority file. Individual authority records were created for those headings formerly represented by a multiple that had been assigned by the Library of Congress to bibliographic records in the MARC database.*

1. Proposing new multiple subdivisions. Submit proposals to establish new multiple subdivisions by creating an "sp" record in the normal manner (see H 200). Format the 1XX field as in the following example:

```
100 0# $a Jesus Christ $x Views on Jewish dietary laws, [Views on  
Jewish law, etc.]
```

a. Punctuation. Follow the punctuation illustrated above, including the placement of commas and brackets, in order to assure consistency in the appearance of multiples in the subject authority file.

b. Number of subdivisions to include. List one subdivision outside the brackets and one subdivision inside the brackets unless more than one is needed to clarify the type of subdivision or qualifier being illustrated. Use the word **etc.** as the final element within the brackets.

c. "Used for", broader term, and related term references. Add no 4XX or 5XX fields to records for headings with multiple subdivisions. If a reference is required for an individual subdivision that would be free-floating because of the existence of the multiple, establish that individual subdivision separately, making the required reference(s).

Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Abstracting and indexing (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1205; H 1670*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., classes of persons, ethnic groups, and uniform titles of sacred works, and under topical headings for works on how to prepare abstracts or indexes of publications about the subject. Also use under types of publications for works on preparing abstracts or indexes of those types of publications.

\$v Abstracts (*H 1205*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under topical headings for works that list publications on the subject and provide full bibliographical information together with substantive summaries or condensations of the facts, ideas, or opinions presented in each publication listed. Use under names of individual persons and corporate bodies for abstracts of works by or about the person or corporate body. Also use under types of publications for works that summarize the contents of those publications.

See also **–Digests** under legal topics.

\$x Access control (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of archives, records, computers, computer networks, and statistical and data-gathering services.

\$Accidents (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual space vehicles, types of industries, and other topical headings. Do not subdivide geographically under names of individual space vehicles.

See also **–Wounds and injuries** under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual animals and groups of animals, individual plants and groups of plants, and individual organs and regions of the body.

\$xAccidents \$x Investigation (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings.

\$x Accounting (*H 1624*)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of corporate bodies and industries, military services, and topical headings.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Accreditation (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies, especially institutions, educational institutions, and services, and under types of institutions, educational institutions, and services. Do not subdivide geographically under names of corporate bodies.

See also **–Study and teaching** under subjects for the accreditation of programs of study in those subjects.

See also **–Certification; –Licenses**

\$x Acronyms (*H 1206.5*)

Use under individual languages other than English, groups of languages, and topical headings for works about acronyms in those languages or pertaining to those topics.

\$x Acronyms \$v Dictionaries (*H 1206.5*)

Use under individual languages other than English, groups of languages, and topical headings for lists of acronyms in those languages or pertaining to those topics.

\$x Administration

Use under names of individual libraries, schools, and institutions in the spheres of health and social services, under types of such institutions, and under types of education and programs in the field of education.

See also **–Colonies–Administration** under names of countries, cities, etc.

See also **–Management**

See also **–Politics and government** under names of countries, cities, etc., and under ethnic groups.

\$v Aerial photographs (*H 1210.5*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under topical headings for collections or discussions of aerial photographs, including collections of reproductions, of a place or topic.

\$x Air conditioning (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of buildings, vehicles, and other constructions.

\$x Air conditioning \$x Control (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of buildings, vehicles, and other constructions.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$v Amateurs' manuals (H 1943.5)

Use under technical topics for works of instruction for nonprofessionals on how to acquire a skill or perform an operation.

\$x Analysis

Use under substances and chemicals for works on methods of analyzing those items or analyzing a sample to determine the presence or quantity of the items, and for works presenting the results of analyses of substances not produced naturally.

See also –**Composition**

\$v Anecdotes

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons, families, and corporate bodies, uniform titles of sacred works, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

\$x Anniversaries, etc.

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons and corporate bodies, and under historic and social movements, individual Christian denominations, events, classes of persons, and ethnic groups for works on anniversary celebrations or commemorations of significant events. Do not use for works merely published on the occasion of an anniversary.

See also –**Centennial celebrations, etc.**

\$x Archival resources (H 1230)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under topical headings for descriptions of the types of documents and historical records about a particular place or topic available in an institution or institutions.

\$v Archives (H 1230)

Use under names of individual persons, families, and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, types of corporate bodies and educational institutions, and military services for collections of documents or historical records, including notes, correspondence, minutes, photographs, legal papers, etc.

\$x Archives \$v Microform catalogs (H 1361)

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$v Art (H 1250)

Use under names of individual persons who lived before 1400, names of deities and mythological or legendary figures, and under headings of the type [*topic*]-[*subdivision*].

See also **-Portraits** under names of individual persons who lived after 1400 and individual families, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and individual wars.

See also headings of the type [*topic*] **in art** and the subdivision **-In art** under names of countries, cities, etc., under names of individual corporate bodies, and under Christian denominations.

\$v Atlases (H 1935)

Use under scientific and technical topics for works consisting of comprehensive, often systematically arranged collections of illustrative plates, charts, etc., usually with explanatory captions.

\$x Audio-visual aids (H 2110)

Use under topical headings for works on audiovisual materials not specifically designed for educational purposes.

See also **-Study and teaching-Audio-visual aids**

\$x Audio-visual aids \$v Catalogs (H 1361)

Use under topical headings for catalogs of audiovisual materials.

\$v Audiocassette catalogs (H 1361)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons and corporate bodies, and under ethnic groups, topical headings, and forms and types of musical compositions, for lists or catalogs of sound recordings on audiocassettes.

\$v Audiotape catalogs (H 1361)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons and corporate bodies, and under ethnic groups, topical headings, and forms and types of musical compositions, for lists or catalogs of sound recordings on audiotapes.

\$x Auditing (H 1624)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of corporate bodies and industries and topical headings.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Authorship

Use under names of individual persons and individual works entered under title, under disciplines, and under literary, motion picture, radio, television, and video forms and genres.

\$x Authorship \$v Style manuals

Use under disciplines

\$x Automatic control

Use under individual technical processes and equipment.

\$x Automation

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of corporate bodies, industries, buildings, processes, and systems.

See also **–Effect of automation on** under occupational groups and types of employees.

\$x Autonomous communities (H 713)

Use under headings of the type **[topic]–Spain** for works discussing collectively the autonomous communities of Spain in relation to the topic, for example, **Law–Spain–Autonomous communities**.

\$x Autonomous regions (H 713)

Use under headings of the type **[topic]–China** for works discussing collectively the autonomous regions of China in relation to the topic, for example, **Minorities–China–Autonomous regions**.

\$x Awards (May Subd Geog) (H 1265)

Use under names of individual persons, corporate bodies, and military services, and under topical headings. This subdivision may be further subdivided by place only under topical headings.

\$x Barrier-free design (May Subd Geog)

Use under types of buildings, structures, and facilities.

\$x Biblical teaching (H 1295)

Use under religious or secular topics for works on the theological and/or ethical teachings of the Bible, or its individual parts, on that topic.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$v Bibliography (*H 1205; H 1322; H 1325; H 1670*)

Use under subjects.

See also **–Imprints** under names of countries, cities, etc.

\$v Bibliography \$v Catalogs (*H 1361*)

Use under subjects.

\$v Bibliography \$v Early (*H 1576*)

Use under subjects for bibliographies issued before 1800.

\$v Bibliography \$v Exhibitions (*H 1593*)

Use under subjects.

\$x Bibliography \$x Methodology

Use under subjects.

\$v Bibliography \$v Microform catalogs (*H 1361; H 1965*)

Use under subjects for catalogs that list works stored in microform editions.

See also **–Microform catalogs**

\$v Bibliography \$v Union lists (*H 1361*)

Use under subjects for catalogs of materials on those subjects held by two or more libraries.

See also **–Union lists**

\$v Bibliography of bibliographies (*H 1325*)

Use under subjects.

\$v Bio-bibliography (*H 1328*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual Christian denominations and monastic and religious orders, and under ethnic groups, literatures, and topical headings.

\$v Bio-bibliography \$v Dictionaries (*H 1328*)

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$v Biography (*H 1330; H 1720; H 1845*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual corporate bodies, uniform titles of sacred works, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual and groups of animals, and historic events.

\$v Biography \$v Dictionaries

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and historic events.

\$v Biography \$v Dictionaries \$x French, [Italian, etc.]

\$x Biography \$x History and criticism

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and historic events.

\$v Blogs

Use under names of individual persons, classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings for blogs by those persons, or about those persons, groups, or topics.

\$v Book reviews (*H 2021*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings for collections of appraisals of books on those places or topics.

See also **–Reviews**

\$x Buildings

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and exhibitions for works that discuss collectively the buildings of those corporate bodies or exhibitions.

See also **–Buildings, structures, etc.** under names of cities.

\$v By-laws

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of corporate bodies.

\$x By-products

Use under types of industries and processes.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$v Calendars

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual corporate bodies, and under topical headings for works that list recurring, coming, or past events occurring in those places, associated with those organizations, or relating to those topics, and under names of individual persons for calendars that include information on events associated with the person or quotations from the person.

\$x Calibration (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of scientific and technical instruments and equipment.

\$x Cantons (*H 713*)

Use under headings of the type [**topic**]-[**country**] for works discussing collectively the cantons of a country in relation to the topic, for example, **Transportation-Switzerland-Cantons**.

\$v Caricatures and cartoons

Use under names of individual persons, families, and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings for collections or discussions of caricatures or pictorial humor about those subjects.

\$v Case studies (*H 1350*)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$v Catalogs (*H 1360; H 1361*)

Use under types of objects, including types of merchandise, art objects, products, publications, collectors' items, technical equipment, etc., for listings of those objects that have been produced, that are available or located at particular places, or that occur on a particular market, often systematically arranged with descriptive details, prices, etc., accompanying each entry. Use **-Catalogs** under the heading **Excavations (Archaeology)** as well as under headings for individual archaeological sites for works listing objects found. Use **-Catalogs** under names of individual corporate bodies and types of organizations for works listing objects, art works, products, etc., produced by, located in, or available from those organizations. Also use **-Catalogs** under names of individual artists, craftspeople, families of artists or craftspeople, and corporate bodies for works listing their art works or crafts which are available or located in particular institutions or places. Also use under persons or families doing business as sellers under their own names.

See also **-Audiocassette catalogs; -Audiotape catalogs; -CD-ROM catalogs; -Compact disc catalogs; -Data tape catalogs; -Discography; -Exhibitions; -Film catalogs; -Microform catalogs**

\$v Catalogs and collections (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1360; H 1427*)

Use under types of natural objects and musical instruments.

\$v CD-ROM catalogs

Use under subjects.

\$x Censorship (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual persons and under individual literatures, wars, and topical headings, especially forms of communication.

\$x Centennial celebrations, etc.

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual corporate bodies, and under historic events.

\$x Certification (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of products and industries, occupational groups, and types of employees for works on official confirmation that standards have been met.

See also **-Accreditation; -Licenses**

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Charitable contributions (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and types of organizations.

\$v Charts, diagrams, etc.

Use under topical headings for works consisting of miscellaneous charts or diagrams illustrating those topics.

\$v Chronology (*H 1367*)

Use under names of individual persons, uniform titles of sacred works, headings not divided by **-History**, such as art, music, and literature headings, and headings for wars, and under topical headings that are inherently historical.

See also **-History-Chronology**

\$x Circulation

Use under types of serial publications.

\$x Citizen participation (*H 1942*)

Use under topical headings for works on the participation of citizens in carrying out an activity.

\$v Classification

Use under classes of persons and topical headings.

\$x Cleaning (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings.

\$v Code numbers

Use under topical headings for works consisting of lists of code numbers.

\$v Code words

Use under topical headings for works consisting of lists of code words.

\$x Cold weather conditions

Use under types of installations, construction activities, and technical processes for works on procedures to be followed during cold weather conditions.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Collectibles (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual persons, corporate bodies, titles of works, and fictitious and legendary characters, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, events, and topical headings, for works on objects depicting or related to those subjects.

\$x Collection and preservation (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of natural objects, including plants, animals, rocks, and minerals, for works on methods of collecting and preserving those objects.

See also **-Antiquities-Collection and preservation** under names of countries, cities, etc., and ethnic groups

\$x Collectors and collecting (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of objects, excluding natural objects, for works on collectors and methods of assembling and maintaining collections of those objects.

\$x Colonies (*H 1149.5*)

Use under headings of the type **[topic]-[place]** for works discussing collectively the colonies of a place in relation to the topic, for example, **Education-Great Britain-Colonies**. Also use under names of countries, cities, etc., for works discussing collectively the colonies ruled by the country or city.

\$v Comic books, strips, etc.

Use under names of individual persons, uniform titles of sacred works, and under topical headings.

\$x Communication systems

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of industries, institutions, installations, military services, and disciplines.

\$v Compact disc catalogs (*H 1361*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons and corporate bodies, and topical headings.

\$x Comparative method

Use under disciplines for works on methods of comparing data relevant to the field.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$v Comparative studies

Use under uniform titles of sacred works, individual Christian denominations, and religious topics.

\$x Competitions (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings.

\$x Composition

Use under natural substances of unfixed composition, including soils, plants, animals, farm products, etc., for the results of chemical analyses of those substances.

See also **–Analysis**

\$x Computer-aided design (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings.

\$x Computer-assisted instruction

Use under topical headings for works on an automated method of instruction in which a student interacts directly with instructional materials stored in a computer.

\$v Computer games

Use under subjects.

\$x Computer network resources

Use under subjects for works on computer network resources available for research in various fields.

\$x Computer networks (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under subjects.

\$x Computer networks \$x Security measures (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under subjects.

\$x Computer programs (*H 2070*)

Use under topical headings for works on computer programs, whether or not lists of machine instructions are included.

See also **–Software**

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Computer simulation (H 2040)
Use under topical headings.

\$v Concordances (H 1670)
Use under names of individual persons, individual works (author-title or title entries), and uniform titles of sacred works, and under individual literatures and literary forms.

\$v Congresses (H 1460)
Use under subjects.

\$x Congresses \$x Attendance (H 1460)
Use under subjects.

\$x Conservation and restoration (May Subd Geog)
Use under types of art objects, library materials, types of architecture, types of buildings, etc., for works on preserving and restoring those items.
See also **-Buildings, structures, etc.-Conservation and restoration** under names of cities and city sections

\$x Control (May Subd Geog)
Use under individual and groups of animals, plants and crops, and pests.

\$v Conversion tables (H 2160)
Use under topical headings.

\$x Cooling (May Subd Geog)
Use under topical headings.

\$x Corrosion (May Subd Geog)
Use under individual metals and metal compounds, individual materials and types of materials, and types of engineering structures, equipment, and vehicles.

\$x Corrupt practices (May Subd Geog)
Use under names of individual corporate bodies, and under types of organizations, activities, and industries. This subdivision may be further divided by place only under types of organizations, activities, and industries.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Cost control

Use under topical headings.

\$x Cost effectiveness

Use under topical headings.

\$x Cost of operation

Use under topical headings.

\$x Costs

Use under topical headings.

\$v Cross-cultural studies (*H 1510*)

Use under topical headings for works which report the results of cross-cultural studies on those topics or discuss the methods and techniques of conducting such studies.

\$x Cult (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under individual deities, divine persons, saints, and persons worshipped for works on systems of beliefs or rituals associated with them.

\$x Curricula (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual educational institutions and under types of education and educational institutions for works about courses offered at those institutions or in those fields.

Do not subdivide geographically under names of individual educational institutions.

\$x Customer services (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of organizations and industries. This subdivision may be further divided by place only under types of organizations and industries.

\$x Data processing

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under topical headings.

\$v Data tape catalogs

Use under subjects.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$v Databases (*H 1520*)

Use under subjects as a form subdivision for actual databases or as a topical subdivision for works on databases on those subjects.

\$x Dating

Use under types of objects for the techniques of fixing the date of their origination.

\$x Decision making

Use under topical headings for works on the process of arriving at decisions for action, including attempts to formulate a general theory based on mathematical analysis and psychological experiment.

\$x Defects (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of materials, equipment, structures, products, etc., in which defects may exist.

\$x Defects \$x Reporting (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of materials, equipment, structures, products, etc.

\$x Defense measures (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of industries, utilities, installations, etc., for measures undertaken for their protection during times of conflict.

\$x Departments (*H 713*)

Use under headings of the type [**topic**]-[**country**] for works discussing collectively the departments of a country in relation to the topic, for example, **Budget-France- Departments**.

\$x Design (*H 1532*)

Use under topical headings where **-Design and construction** would not be appropriate.

\$x Design and construction (*H 1532*)

Use under individual examinations and types of examinations; also use under types of structures, machines, equipment, etc., for works discussing their engineering and/or construction.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$v Designs and plans (*H 1532*)

Use under architectural headings, including types of buildings and rooms, and under landscape headings, including types of gardens and parks, for works containing architectural drawings.

\$x Deterioration (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of substances, materials, products, etc.

\$v Dictionaries (*H 1540*)

Use under subjects.

See also **–Encyclopedias**

\$v Dictionaries \$x French, [Italian, etc.] (*H 1540*)

Use under subjects.

\$v Dictionaries \$x Polyglot (*H 1540*)

Use under subjects.

\$v Dictionaries, Juvenile (*H 1690*)

Use under subjects.

\$x Digitization (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of library materials.

\$v Directories (*H 1558*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies and families, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, Christian denominations, types of organizations, and topical headings for individual directories containing names, addresses, and other identifying data.

See also **–Registers; –Telephone directories**

\$x Discipline

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of corporate bodies, classes of persons, individual religions, and Christian denominations for the enforcement of rules affecting conduct or action.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$v Discography (H 1361)

Use under names of individual persons and under topical headings for lists or catalogs of sound recordings.

See also –**Audiotape catalogs; –Songs and music–Discography**

\$x Documentation (May Subd Geog)

Use under topical headings for works on the processes by which documents on those topics are made available.

\$v Drama (H 1780)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons, families, and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings for plays or musical dramatic works on those subjects.

\$v Drawings

Use as a form subdivision under technical topics for collections of drawings, plans, etc., and as a topical subdivision for the technique of making such drawings, unless a separate heading for the technique has been provided.

\$x Drying (May Subd Geog)

Use under individual materials, products, and objects dried.

\$x Dust control (May Subd Geog)

Use under types of industries, industrial plants, and processes.

\$v Early works to 1800 (H 1576)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and appropriate topical headings to designate individual works written or issued before 1800.

\$x Earthquake effects (May Subd Geog)

Use under types of buildings, structures, facilities, and equipment.

\$x Econometric models (H 2040)

Use under topical headings for works that employ mathematical or statistical models used to test or measure economic phenomena.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Economic aspects (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings and individual wars.

See also **–Economic conditions** under names of countries, cities, etc., and under classes of persons and ethnic groups, including occupational groups, for works discussing the economic history or economic conditions in general of a place, class of persons, or ethnic group.

\$x Electromechanical analogies (*H 2040*)

Use under scientific and technical topics.

\$v Electronic discussion groups

Use under subjects.

\$x Electronic information resources

Use under subjects.

\$x Electronic publishing (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of published materials and headings for literature on particular topics.

\$x Employees

Use under names of individual nongovernmental corporate bodies and under types of industries, services, establishments, and institutions.

See also **–Officials and employees**

\$v Encyclopedias (*H 1540*)

Use under subjects.

\$v Encyclopedias, Juvenile (*H 1540*)

Use under subjects.

\$x Endowments

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of corporate bodies and disciplines.

\$x Energy conservation (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of industries, facilities, etc.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Energy consumption (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of industries, military services, and topical headings.

\$x Environmental aspects (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under individual military services, events, and wars, individual chemicals and groups of chemicals, individual materials and types of materials, and under types of industries, processes, machines, facilities, constructions, educational institutions, and events for environmental issues associated with their operation, creation, use, or planning and execution. Also use under individual diseases for environmental aspects of their causation or development.

See also **–Environmental conditions** under names of countries, cities, etc.

\$x Equipment and supplies

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of industries, processes, services, activities, institutions, disciplines, animals, plants and crops, vehicles, and wars.

See also **–Instruments; –Safety appliances**

\$x Estimates (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of engineering, technical processes, industries, etc., for estimates of the cost of construction, installation, etc., or the carrying out of a task to completion.

\$x Evaluation (*H 1591*)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of institutions, products, services, equipment, activities, projects, and programs for works on methods of assessing or appraising those subjects, or for works on both the methods and results of assessing them.

See also **–Testing**

See also **–Rating of** under classes of persons.

\$x Examinations

Use under names of individual corporate bodies, educational institutions, and military services and under types of educational institutions for works discussing examinations given by those organizations; under classes of persons for works discussing examinations for those groups; and under names of individual persons and titles of works and under topical headings for works discussing examinations given about those persons, titles, or topics.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Examinations **\$v Study guides**

\$v Examinations, questions, etc.

Use under classes of persons for compilations of questions and answers for examinations for those groups; and under names of individual persons and titles of works and under topical headings for compilations of questions and answers for examinations about those persons, titles, or topics.

See also **–Problems, exercises, etc.**

\$v Excerpts

Use under motion picture forms and genres and under forms and types of musical compositions.

\$v Exhibitions (*H 1593*)

Use under subjects.

See also **–Bibliography–Exhibitions**

\$x Experiments

Use under scientific and technical topics for discussions about experiments and instructions for carrying them out.

\$x Expertising (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under headings for art forms and under types of art objects, types of architecture, and types of buildings.

\$v Facsimiles (*H 1595*)

Use under headings or subdivisions designating types of printed or written materials, documents, etc.

See also **–Manuscripts–Facsimiles; –Maps–Facsimiles**

\$v Fiction (*H 1720; H 1790*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons, families, and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings for collections of stories or novels on those topics. Also use under names of individual persons and historic events for individual works of biographical or historical fiction, and under animals for individual stories about animals.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Fieldwork (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1645*)

Use under disciplines for discussions of the techniques of carrying out work in the field to gain practical experience through firsthand observation and to collect data.

\$v Film catalogs (*H 1361*)

Use under subjects.

\$x Finance (*H 1624*)

Use under names of individual nongovernmental corporate bodies and under types of industries, corporate bodies, services, technical operations, etc., for works on the raising and expenditure of funds. Use under names of individual government bodies only for works on their management of nonappropriated funds. Use under ethnic groups for the financial affairs of the group as a whole.

See also **–Appropriations and expenditures** under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual government agencies.

See also **–Finance, Personal** under names of individual persons and under classes of persons and ethnic groups.

\$x Fires and fire prevention (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of institutions, buildings, industries, and vehicles.

\$v Folklore (*H 1627; H 1720*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, uniform titles of sacred works, and topical headings for works discussing those topics as themes in folklore and for collections of folklore texts on those subjects.

\$x Food service (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual legislative bodies and types of institutions, organized activities, etc., for provisions for meals and food in those enterprises. Do not subdivide geographically under legislative bodies.

\$x Forecasting (*H 1628*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under topical headings.

\$z Foreign countries (*H 1919.5*)

Use under ethnic groups, individual languages, individual literatures, military services, and types of publications qualified by language or nationality.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Foreign influences (*H 1675*)

Use under headings for civilizations of places, or particular aspects of those civilizations, including art forms, literary forms, philosophies, intellectual life, etc., under ethnic groups, and under disciplines when further subdivided by place for works discussing general outside cultural influences on those civilizations, groups, or disciplines.

\$x Forgeries (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual persons and under types of art objects, documents, etc.

\$v Forms

Use under names of individual corporate bodies, and under topical headings for works consisting of, or containing, substantial numbers of blank forms.

\$v Formulae, receipts, prescriptions

Use under branches and systems of medicine.

See also **–Medicine–Formulae, receipts, prescriptions** under ethnic groups.

\$x Fuel systems

Use under types of equipment and vehicles.

\$x Fume control (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of industries, industrial plants, and processes.

\$x Geographic information systems (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under subjects.

\$x Government policy (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1642*)

Use under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings not inherently governmental.

See also headings of the type **[topic] and state** and **[topic] policy**.

\$x Grading (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under individual animals and groups of animals, individual plants and groups of plants, and individual commodities.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Graphic methods

Use under disciplines, types of technical processes, scientific phenomena, etc., for the technique of solving problems by means of graphs.

\$v Guidebooks (H 1645)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies and parks, etc., and certain topical headings.

See also **–Tours** under names of countries, cities, etc.

\$v Handbooks, manuals, etc. (H 1646)

Use under subjects.

See also **–Amateurs' manuals; –Laboratory manuals; –Observers' manuals**

\$x Health aspects (May Subd Geog)

Use under topical headings.

\$x Heating and ventilation (May Subd Geog)

Use under types of buildings, vehicles, and other constructions.

\$x Heating and ventilation \$x Control (May Subd Geog)

Use under types of buildings, vehicles, and other constructions.

\$x Heraldry

Use under names of individual corporate bodies, types of industries, and topical headings for the devising, granting, and use of armorial insignia.

\$x Historiography

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual corporate bodies, uniform titles of sacred works and treaties, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings.

\$x History (H 1647; H 1845)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual corporate bodies, uniform titles of sacred works, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

\$x History \$y To 1500 (H 1647)

Use under topical headings.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x History \$y 16th century (H 1647)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

\$x History \$y 17th century (H 1647)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

\$x History \$y 18th century (H 1647)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

\$x History \$y 19th century (H 1647)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

\$x History \$y 20th century (H 1647)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

\$x History \$y 21st century (H 1647)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

\$x History \$v Chronology (H 1367)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual corporate bodies, and under ethnic groups, and topical headings not inherently historical.

See also **-Chronology**

\$x History \$x Philosophy

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under topical headings.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x History \$v Sources (H 1647; H 2080)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings not inherently historical for collections or discussions of source materials of all types, such as legal documents, letters, diaries, family papers, visual and moving image materials, assembled at a later time to serve as source materials for use by students, scholars, etc., in their research on the subject.

See also **–Sources**

\$x History and criticism (H 1647)

Use under literary, music, film, television, and video recording form headings.

\$x History of doctrines

Use under religious topics.

\$x History of doctrines \$y Early church, ca. 30-600

Use under religious topics.

\$x History of doctrines \$y Middle Ages, 600-1500

Use under religious topics.

\$x History of doctrines \$y 16th century

Use under religious topics.

\$x History of doctrines \$y 17th century

Use under religious topics.

\$x History of doctrines \$y 18th century

Use under religious topics.

\$x History of doctrines \$y 19th century

Use under religious topics.

\$x History of doctrines \$y 20th century

Use under religious topics.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x History of doctrines \$y 21st century

Use under religious topics.

\$x Hot weather conditions (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings for works on procedures to be followed during hot weather conditions.

See also –**Tropical conditions**

\$v Humor

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons and corporate bodies, uniform titles of sacred works, and under topical headings.

\$x Hurricane effects (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of buildings, structures, facilities, and equipment.

\$x Identification

Use under classes of persons and topical headings. Also use under groups of animals and plants and types of objects as a topical or form subdivision for works presenting the characteristics of a group for the purpose of determining the names of its members.

\$v Illustrations (*H 1659*)

Use under names of individual persons, individual works (author-title or title entries), uniform titles of sacred works, and under individual literatures, literary forms, and types of published materials.

\$v In art (*H 362; H 910; H 1250; H 1935*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, and individual Christian denominations, and under uniform titles, for their representation as physical objects in artistic works. Use as a form subdivision for works consisting of reproductions of artistic works that depict the place, body, etc. Use as a topical subdivision for works that discuss the place, body, etc., as a theme in art.

\$v Indexes (*H 1670*)

Use under subjects.

See also –**Concordances**

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Industrial applications (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under scientific topics, individual chemicals, and individual plants and groups of plants.

\$x Influence (*H 1675*)

Use under names of individual persons and corporate bodies, uniform titles of literary, artistic, and sacred works, and under forms and movements in the literary and visual arts, types of organizations, religions, and individual wars for works discussing their influence.

\$x Information resources

Use under subjects.

See also –**Electronic information resources**

\$x Information resources management (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and types of industries and organizations.

\$x Information services (*H 1675.5*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons, corporate bodies, and military services, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

\$x Information technology (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under disciplines, types of industries, services, and organizations.

\$x Insignia

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and military services and under types of corporate bodies.

\$x Inspection (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1676.5*)

Use under names of individual military services, and under types of merchandise, products, equipment, engineering structures, and buildings, and individual and groups of animals and plants.

\$x Installation (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of equipment.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Instruments

Use under scientific and technical disciplines for discussions of the instruments employed in those fields.

\$v Interactive multimedia

Use under subjects.

\$x International cooperation

Use under topical headings.

\$x Internet marketing (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of commodities, products, and services.

\$x Interpretation

Use under individual tests and types of tests.

\$v Inventories

Use under types of industries, institutions, and topical headings for lists or discussions of raw materials, supplies, work in process, finished goods, etc., on hand at a particular time..

\$x Inventory control (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and military services and under types of industries, organizations, and facilities. This subdivision may be further subdivided by place only under types of industries, organizations, and facilities.

\$v Job descriptions (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and military services, and under occupational groups. This subdivision may be further subdivided by place only under occupational groups.

\$v Juvenile drama (*H 1690*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$v Juvenile fiction (H 1690)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

\$v Juvenile films (H 1690)

Use under subjects.

\$v Juvenile humor (H 1690)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

\$v Juvenile literature (H 1690)

Use under subjects.

\$v Juvenile poetry (H 1690)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

\$v Juvenile software (H 2070)

Use under topical headings for actual software items, that is, machine-readable editions.

\$v Juvenile sound recordings (H 1690)

Use under subjects.

\$x Koranic teaching

Use under Islamic topics for works on the theological and/or ethical teachings of the Koran on that topic, for example, **Islamic education–Koranic teaching; War–Religious aspects–Islam–Koranic teaching.**

\$x Labeling (May Subd Geog)

Use under types of products.

\$x Labor productivity (May Subd Geog)

Use under types of industries, occupations, and processes.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$v Laboratory manuals (*H 1646*)

Use under scientific and technical topics for workbooks containing concise background information and directions for performing work, including experiments, in the laboratory.

\$x Landscape architecture (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of buildings, institutions, and facilities.

\$x Language

Use under names of individual persons and corporate bodies, individual works entered under title, and under classes of persons, disciplines, types of newspapers, and individual wars.

See also **–Languages** under names of countries, cities, etc., and under ethnic groups.

See also **–Slang** under individual languages and groups of languages and under topical headings.

\$v Legends (*H 1627; H 1795*)

Use under names of individual persons and legendary characters and uniform titles of sacred works, and under religious topics for collected or individual literary versions of legendary tales about those persons, characters, or topics.

See also **–Romances**

\$x Library resources

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings for works describing the resources and special collections available on those subjects.

\$x Licenses (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under occupational groups and types of employees, under types of industries, facilities, and institutions, and under individual land vehicles.

See also **–Accreditation; –Certification**

\$x Licenses \$x Fees (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under occupational groups and types of employees, under types of industries, facilities, and institutions, and under individual land vehicles.

\$x Lighting (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of vehicles, structures, buildings, rooms, installations, etc.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Linear programming

Use under topical headings.

\$v Literary collections

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons, families, and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings for collections including several literary forms.

\$x Liturgy

Use under individual Jewish and Christian sects and rites; under names of individual Christian monastic and religious orders; and under individual Jewish and Christian ceremonies, rituals, holidays, etc.

\$x Liturgy \$v Texts (H 2190)

\$x Location (May Subd Geog)

Use under types of industries, business entities, government agencies, and facilities, and under individual plants and groups of plants.

\$v Longitudinal studies (H 1848)

Use under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

\$x Maintenance and repair

Use under types of objects, including machinery, vehicles, structures, etc., requiring maintenance and repair.

See also **–Repairing**

\$x Management

Use under names of individual corporate bodies, including government agencies, galleries, museums, parks, etc., and under types of industries, industrial plants and processes, special activities, resources, etc.

See also **–Administration**

\$x Manuscripts (H 1855)

Use under names of individual persons and families, individual works entered under title, uniform titles of sacred works, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, groups of authors, literatures, and topical headings.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Manuscripts \$v Catalogs (H 1855)

\$v Manuscripts \$v Facsimiles (H 1595; H 1855)

Use under names of individual composers and literary authors and under individual works entered under title.

\$x Manuscripts \$v Indexes

\$x Manuscripts \$v Microform catalogs (H 1361)

\$v Maps (H 1865)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual corporate bodies, and under topical headings for individual maps or collections of maps.

See also **–Aerial views** under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual educational institutions.

\$x Maps \$v Bibliography

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual corporate bodies, and under topical headings.

\$v Maps \$v Early works to 1800 (H 1576)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under topical headings.

\$v Maps \$v Facsimiles (H 1595)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under topical headings

\$x Maps \$x Symbols

Use under topical headings.

\$x Marketing (H 1870)

Use under types of commodities, products, services, and institutions providing products or services.

\$x Materials (May Subd Geog)

Use under scientific and technical disciplines and under types of equipment and construction.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Mathematical models (*H 2040*)

Use under topical headings.

\$x Mathematics

Use under topical headings for works on the mathematics employed in those fields.

\$x Measurement

Use under scientific and technical topics for works on the technique of making measurements.

\$x Medals (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual persons and corporate bodies other than military services, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings, for works on commemorative or honorary medals issued or awarded in relation to the subject.

This subdivision may be further subdivided by place only under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings. Use **–Medals, badges, decorations, etc.** under military services.

\$x Medical examinations (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual military services and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings for which medical examinations are needed, such as insurance.

\$v Meditations

Use under names of individual persons, uniform titles of sacred works, and under religious topics for works containing collections of thoughts or reflections on the spiritual significance of the person or topic.

\$x Membership

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and types of corporate bodies for works on the conditions of belonging to those organizations.

\$x Methodology

Use under disciplines and other topical headings for works on both the theory and practice of procedures to be followed.

See also **–Technique**

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$v Microform catalogs (*H 1361; H 1965*)

Use under names of individual institutions and collections for catalogs that list works stored in those institutions or collections in microform editions.

See also **–Archives–Microform catalogs; –Bibliography–Microform catalogs**

\$v Miscellanea (*H 1910*)

Use under subjects.

\$x Models (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2040*)

Use under types of objects and organs and regions of the body for works on physical or working models of those objects or body parts.

\$x Moisture (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of farm produce, objects, materials, technical equipment, etc., for works on their moisture content.

\$x Moral and ethical aspects (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1998*)

Use under non-religious or non-ethical topics for works that discuss moral and/or ethical questions regarding the topic.

See also **–Professional ethics** under occupational groups and types of employees.

\$x Museums (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1916*)

Use under names of individual persons, families, and corporate bodies, and under ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings for which phrase headings for the type of museum have not been established. This subdivision may be further subdivided by place only under headings for names of individual persons and families, and ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings.

\$x Mythology (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1998*)

Use under topical headings.

\$x Name (*H 1919*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons, deities, Christian denominations, and corporate bodies, and under ethnic groups and individual wars, events, etc., for works on the name's origin, history, spelling, validity, etc.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Names (H 1919)

Use under types of objects, animals, events, organizations, and educational institutions for the rules, customs, etc., in the naming of those items.

\$v Newspapers (H 1920)

Use under subjects.

\$x Noise

Use under topical headings.

\$v Nomenclature

Use under scientific and technical disciplines and types of substances, plants, and animals for systematically derived lists of names or designations that have been formally adopted or sanctioned, or for discussions of the principles involved in the creation and application of such names.

\$v Nomograms

Use under topical headings.

\$v Notation

Use under scientific and technical topics for works containing the symbols, formulae, or signs employed in the field.

\$v Observations

Use under scientific topics for works consisting of numerical data obtained by the observation of natural phenomena or for discussions on the processing and use of those data.

\$v Observers' manuals (H 1646)

Use under scientific topics for instruction books on making observations of natural phenomena.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Officials and employees

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual international and governmental agencies, and under types of government agencies and types of labor unions. This subdivision may be further subdivided by place only when used under names of countries, cities, etc.

See also **–Employees**

\$x On postage stamps (*H 1945*)

Use under names of individual persons and corporate bodies, under titles of works and under names of countries, cities, etc., for works on the portrayal of those entities on postage stamps.

\$v Online chat groups

Use under subjects.

\$x Orbit

Use under names of individual artificial satellites.

\$v Outlines, syllabi, etc.

Use under names of individual persons, uniform titles of sacred works, classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings for brief statements of the principal elements of a subject to be studied, usually arranged by headings and subheadings.

\$x Packaging (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of products and merchandise for the techniques of wrapping, sealing, and labeling those items for marketing.

\$x Packing (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of products and commodities for the techniques of preparing those items for storage or shipment.

\$v Pamphlets

Use under 16th, 17th, and 18th century period subdivisions of European and American history and under individual wars, for short, separately published, usually polemical, essays or treatises regarding controversial issues of contemporary interest, especially political or religious matters.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$v Papal documents

Use under topical headings for collections of documents and other papal pronouncements on the topic.

\$v Parodies, imitations, etc.

Use under names of individual persons, individual works entered under title, and motion picture, television, and video forms and genres.

\$v Passenger lists

Use under names of individual ships.

\$v Patents

Use under disciplines and under types of articles and processes patented.

\$v Periodicals (H 1927)

Use under subjects.

\$x Periodicals \$v Abbreviations of titles

Use under subjects.

\$x Periodicals \$v Bibliography

Use under subjects for lists of serials or periodicals on a subject.

\$x Periodicals \$v Bibliography \$v Catalogs (H 1361)

Use under subjects for lists of serials or periodicals held by one organization or library, assembled as a private collection, or issued by an individual publisher.

\$x Periodicals \$v Bibliography \$v Union lists (H 1361)

Use under subjects for catalogs of serials or periodicals on those subjects held by two or more libraries.

\$x Periodicals \$v Indexes (H 1670)

Use under subjects. **\$v Personal narratives (H 1928)**

Use under names of events and wars.

\$x Personal narratives \$x History and criticism

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Personnel management

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of industries and organizations.

\$x Philosophy (*H 1929*)

Use under names of individual persons who are not philosophers, and under groups of literary authors, uniform titles of sacred works, and topical headings.

\$v Photographs (*H 1935*)

Use under subjects for works that consist of actual photographs, that is, photographic prints or digital photographs, rather than reproductions of photographs.

\$v Photographs from space (*1210.5*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under topical headings for collections of photographs taken from outer space. Do not use for cartographic materials.

\$x Physiological aspects

Use under types of activities and mental conditions for works on the relationship between an individual's activity, mental state, etc., and his physiology.

See also **–Physiology** under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual and groups of animals and plants, and individual organs and regions of the body.

\$x Physiological effect (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under individual chemicals, materials, individual plants and groups of plants, and environmental phenomena or conditions for works on their effect on the functions of living organisms.

\$v Pictorial works (*H 1935*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual persons, families, and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings.

Also use under literary works entered under author for works consisting of pictures pertaining to the work as a physical object or, in the case of dramatic works, to productions of the work.

See also **–Portraits** under names of individual persons who lived after 1400, individual families, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and individual wars.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Planning

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of activities, facilities, industries, services, undertakings, etc., for works that describe or discuss the planning process.

\$v Poetry (H 1800)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons, families, and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings for collections of poetry and individual poems on those subjects.

\$x Political activity (May Subd Geog) (H 1942)

Use under names of individual persons, families, corporate bodies, and military services, and under classes of persons, individual Christian denominations, and types of corporate bodies for works on the political participation of those persons or organizations.

See also **–Politics and government** under ethnic groups

See also **–Political and social views** under individual persons and groups of literary authors.

\$x Political aspects (May Subd Geog) (H 1942)

Use under individual religious sects and denominations and topical headings for works on the political dimensions or implications of nonpolitical topics.

See also **–Politics and government** under names of countries, cities, etc., and under ethnic groups.

\$v Popular works (H 1943.5)

Use under scientific, technical, and legal headings, etc., for works written for the layperson; and under medical disciplines, individual diseases, and under headings of the type [*part of the body*]**–Diseases** for materials written for the layperson.

\$v Posters (H 1945.5)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual persons and corporate bodies, classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings for individual posters and collections and/or discussions of posters about those subjects.

\$x Power supply (May Subd Geog)

Use under types of buildings, installations, equipment, industries, etc.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Practice (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of professions.

\$v Prayers and devotions

Use under names of individual religious and monastic orders and under individual religions, Christian denominations, classes of persons and ethnic groups for whose use the prayers are intended; under names of individual saints, deities, etc., to whom the devotions are directed; and under topical headings for prayers and devotions on those topics.

\$x Prayers and devotions \$x History and criticism

\$x Preservation (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under individual organs, and types of perishable products, including food, drugs, textiles, etc.

\$x Press coverage (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc, and individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual events, and topical headings.

\$x Prevention

Use under individual or types of diseases and medical conditions, and under situations to be avoided.

\$x Prices (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of products, objects, etc., and under industries where one general heading for the products of that industry is lacking.

\$x Prices \$x Government policy (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of products, objects, etc., and under industries where one general heading for the products of that industry is lacking.

\$x Private collections (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1427*)

Use under types of objects, including art and antiquities and excluding natural objects and musical instruments, for works on privately owned collections of those objects.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Privileges and immunities

Use under names of individual international agencies and legislative bodies and under types of organizations and educational institutions.

\$v Problems, exercises, etc.

Use under topical headings for compilations of practice problems or exercises pertinent to the study of the topic.

See also **–Examinations, questions, etc.**

\$x Production and direction (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under forms and types of musical compositions, under individual art forms performed on stage or screen, under motion picture forms and genres, and under types of programming for the broadcast media.

\$x Production control (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of industries, industrial plants, and processes.

\$x Production standards (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of industries and processes.

\$v Programmed instruction

Use under topical headings for works discussing presequenced instruction in which the learner is able to govern the pacing of the process, sometimes with a teaching machine, or for programmed texts on those topics.

\$x Programming (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under individual and types of computers, microprocessors, and programmable calculators.

\$x Prophecies

Use under names of individual persons and deities, uniform titles of sacred works, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and individual wars.

See also **–History–Prophecies** under names of countries, cities, etc.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Protection (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of equipment, structures, individual and groups of plants and crops, organs and regions of the body, and under classes of persons for works on preserving these items or persons from physical damage or harm.

\$x Provinces (*H 713*)

Use under headings of the type [**topic**]-[**country**] for works discussing collectively the provinces of a country in relation to the topic, for example, **Economic forecasting–Canada–Provinces**.

\$x Psychological aspects

Use under topical headings other than religious topics for works on the influence of conditions, activities, objects, etc., on the mental condition or personality of individuals.

\$x Psychology

Use under uniform titles of sacred works, religions, and religious topics for the psychological aspects of those works or topics. Use under names of individual persons for discussions or interpretations of the person's psychological traits, personality, character, etc. Also use under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and individual and groups of animals for the mental processes or characteristics of those persons or animals.

\$x Public opinion (*H 1955*)

Use under names of individual persons and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings for works on public opinion on those persons or topics.

\$x Public relations (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies, military services, and topical headings.

\$x Publishing (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies, individual Christian denominations, and types of corporate bodies, and under types of published materials and headings for literature on particular topics.

See also **–Publication and distribution** under uniform titles of sacred works.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Purchasing (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under individual animals and groups of animals and under types of products and services.

\$x Quality control

Use under types of industries, industrial plants, and processes.

\$v Quotations, maxims, etc. (*H 1969*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under topical headings.

See also **–Quotations** under names of individual persons and families, uniform titles of sacred works, and under classes of persons and ethnic groups.

\$x Rates (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of services, utilities, transportation systems, etc., for prices charged for services provided or items sold according to a specific ratio, scale, or standard.

\$v Readings with music

Use under topical headings.

\$v Records and correspondence

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and types of industries, organizations, etc.

\$x Recreational use (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of bodies of water, types of land, types of geographic features, and types of buildings with other functions.

\$x Reference books (*H 1980*)

Use under subjects.

\$x Regional disparities

Use under topical headings.

See also **–Economic conditions–Regional disparities** under names of countries, etc.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Regions (H 713)

Use under headings of the type [**topic**]-[**country**] for works discussing collectively the regions of a country in relation to a topic, for example, **Law-Italy-Regions**. Use only under countries whose legally designated first order divisions are called regions.

\$v Registers (H 1558)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, and families, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings for lists of names of persons, organizations, or objects, etc., without addresses or other identifying data.

See also **-Directories**

\$x Reliability

Use under types of equipment, machinery, technical systems, industrial plants, etc.

\$x Remodeling (May Subd Geog)

Use under types of buildings and rooms.

\$x Remodeling for other use (May Subd Geog)

Use under types of buildings and structures.

\$x Remote sensing

Use under topical headings.

\$x Repairing (May Subd Geog)

Use under types of objects not requiring maintenance.

See also **-Maintenance and repair**

\$x Republics (H 713)

Use under headings of the type [**topic**]-[**country**] for works discussing collectively the republics of a country in relation to the topic, for example, **Civil law-Soviet Union-Republics**.

\$x Research (May Subd Geog) (H 2020)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, and classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Research grants (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under topical headings. This subdivision may be further subdivided by place only under topical headings.

\$v Reviews (*H 2021*)

Use under the heading **Books** and headings for types of books for collections of descriptive and evaluative accounts of books on many subjects. Use under headings for nonbook materials for collections of descriptive and evaluative accounts of those materials. Also use under headings for mass media and the performing arts for collections of critical writings about programs, performances, etc.

\$x Risk assessment (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings with which physical risk is associated.

\$v Romances (*H 1795*)

Use under names of individual persons and legendary characters for texts of medieval (that is, pre-1501) European tales based chiefly on legends of chivalric love and adventure in which those persons or characters are the dominant character.

See also **–Legends**

\$v Rules

Use under names of individual religious and monastic orders, contests, and sports events and under types of games and activities.

\$v Rules and practice

Use under types of, and names of individual, courts, legislative bodies, constitutional conventions, and administrative or regulatory agencies, for works containing the rules and practice of those bodies.

See also **–Regulations** under names of individual educational institutions and military services.

\$x Safety appliances (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of machines, vehicles, industrial plants, occupations, etc.

\$x Safety measures

Use under names of individual corporate bodies, military services, and topical headings.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Safety regulations (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings.

\$x Sanitation (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies, types of industries, and topical headings.

Do not subdivide geographically under corporate bodies.

\$x Scholarships, fellowships, etc. (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and fields of study.

\$x Scientific applications (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of technical devices or processes used to further scientific advancement.

\$x Security measures (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under individual computers, networks, and systems, and under types of buildings, installations, and industries. This subdivision may be further subdivided by place only under individual computers, networks, and systems, and under types of buildings, installations, and industries.

See also **–Computer networks–Security measures**.

\$v Sermons (*H 2032*)

Use under names of individual persons and under sects of individual religions, Christian denominations, types of educational institutions, uniform titles of sacred works, individual wars, and topical headings.

\$x Sermons \$x History and criticism (*H 2032*)

\$x Sex differences (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings.

\$x Signers

Use under uniform titles of historic documents.

\$x Simulation games

Use under topical headings.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Simulation methods (H 2040)

Use under topical headings.

\$x Slang

Use under individual languages and groups of languages, and under topical headings.

\$v Slides

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual persons and under topical headings.

\$x Social aspects (May Subd Geog)

Use under topical headings for works that discuss the effect of the item, activity, discipline, etc., and society on each other.

See also **–Social conditions** under names of countries, cities, etc., and under classes of persons and ethnic groups for works on the social history or sociology of the place or group.

See also **–Social life and customs** under names of countries, cities, etc., and under classes of persons and ethnic groups.

\$x Societies, etc. (H 2060)

Use under names of individual persons, families, and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, uniform titles of sacred works, and topical headings for works discussing two or more societies or institutions related to those subjects.

See also **–Societies and clubs** under age and sex groups.

\$x Sociological aspects (H 2055)

Use under types of institutions for works discussing the impact of the inherent nature of the institution in question on group interaction within the institution and vice versa.

\$v Software (H 2070)

Use under topical headings as a form subdivision for actual computer programs that are tools to perform tasks, for example, systems software, utilities, or applications programs.

Do not use for computer files or electronic resources that are *about* a given topic, or to indicate only that the item is machine-readable.

See also **–Computer games; –Computer programs; –Databases.**

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$v Songs and music (H 2075)

Use under names of individual persons and corporate bodies, and under ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings.

See also **–Music** under ethnic groups.

\$x Songs and music \$v Discography

\$x Songs and music \$x History and criticism (H 2075)

\$v Songs and music \$v Texts (H 2190)

\$x Soundproofing (May Subd Geog)

Use under types of buildings, structures, facilities, and equipment.

\$v Sources (H 1647; H 2080)

Use under individual works (author-title or title entries), historical topics, and headings for systems of law, for collections or discussions of source materials of all types compiled for scholars. Also use under names of individual persons for collections of materials that served as the person's sources of ideas or inspiration for his or her endeavors or creative works, and for discussions of those source materials. Also use under types of literatures for works about sources of ideas or inspiration for those literary works.

See also **–History–Sources**

\$v Specifications (May Subd Geog) (H 2083)

Use under types of engineering, construction, industries, products, and merchandise.

\$v Specimens

Use under types of publications, printed matter, etc., as a form subdivision for actual specimens of the material. Also use under individual typefaces or groups of typefaces as a form subdivision for works consisting primarily or entirely of samples of printed matter using those typefaces and intended to illustrate their appearance.

\$x Spectra

Use under individual chemicals, materials, elementary particles, and celestial bodies.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$v Speeches in Congress

Use under topical headings for single speeches or compilations of speeches on those topics.

\$x Stability

Use under types of equipment, individual chemicals and groups of chemicals, and individual land vehicles and types of land vehicles.

\$x Standards (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings for descriptions of the example or model set up and established by authority as the measure of quantity, quality, value, extent, weight, etc., to be followed.

See also **–Production standards**

\$x State supervision (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings.

\$x States (*H 713*)

Use under headings of the type [**topic**]**–[country]** for works discussing collectively the states of a country in relation to the topic, for example, **Income tax–United States–States**.

\$x Statistical methods (*H 2095*)

Use under topical headings for discussions of the methods of solving problems on those topics through the use of statistics.

\$x Statistical services (*H 2095*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under topical headings for works on services that collect numerical data located in those places or about those topics.

\$v Statistics (*H 2095*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual corporate bodies, classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings for works consisting of or discussing statistics about those subjects.

See also **–Statistics, Medical** under names of countries, cities, etc.

See also **–Statistics, Vital** under names of countries, cities, etc., and under ethnic groups for compilations of birth, marriage, and death statistics.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Storage (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of commodities, foods, materials, industrial products, etc., for their safe-keeping in a warehouse or other depository.

\$x Study and teaching (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2110*)

Use under subjects for works on methods of study and teaching on those subjects.

See also **–Education** under names of individual religious and monastic orders, classes of persons, ethnic groups, and Christian denominations.

See also **–Instruction and study** under music headings.

See also **–Training of** under occupational groups and types of employees.

\$x Study and teaching \$x Activity programs (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2110*)

Use under subjects.

\$x Study and teaching \$x Audio-visual aids (*H 2110*)

Use under subjects for works on the use of audiovisual aids in the learning and teaching of those subjects.

\$x Study and teaching \$x Simulation methods (*H 2110*)

Use under subjects.

\$x Study and teaching \$x Supervision (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings.

\$x Study and teaching (Continuing education) (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2110*)

Use under subjects.

\$x Study and teaching (Continuing education) \$x Audio-visual aids

Use under subjects.

\$x Study and teaching (Early childhood) (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2110*)

Use under subjects.

\$x Study and teaching (Early childhood) \$x Activity programs (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2110*)

Use under subjects.

Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Study and teaching (Early childhood) \$x Audio-visual aids (H 2110)
Use under subjects.

\$x Study and teaching (Elementary) (May Subd Geog) (H 2110)
Use under subjects.

\$x Study and teaching (Elementary) \$x Activity programs (May Subd Geog) (H 2110)
Use under subjects.

\$x Study and teaching (Elementary) \$x Audio-visual aids (H 2110)
Use under subjects.

\$x Study and teaching (Elementary) \$x Simulation methods (H 2110)
Use under subjects.

\$x Study and teaching (Graduate) (May Subd Geog) (H 2110)
Use under subjects.

\$x Study and teaching (Higher) (May Subd Geog) (H 2110)
Use under subjects.

\$x Study and teaching (Higher) \$x Activity programs (May Subd Geog) (H 2110)
Use under subjects.

\$x Study and teaching (Higher) \$x Audio-visual aids (H 2110)
Use under subjects.

\$x Study and teaching (Higher) \$x Simulation methods (H 2110)
Use under subjects.

\$x Study and teaching (Internship) (May Subd Geog) (H 2110)
Use under subjects.

\$x Study and teaching (Middle school) (May Subd Geog) (H 2110)
Use under subjects.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Study and teaching (Middle school) \$x Activity programs (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2110*)
Use under subjects.

\$x Study and teaching (Middle school) \$x Audio-visual aids (*H 2110*)
Use under subjects.

\$x Study and teaching (Preschool) (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2110*)
Use under subjects.

\$x Study and teaching (Preschool) \$x Activity programs (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2110*)
Use under subjects.

\$x Study and teaching (Preschool) \$x Audio-visual aids (*H 2110*)
Use under subjects.

\$x Study and teaching (Primary) (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2110*)
Use under subjects.

\$x Study and teaching (Primary) \$x Activity programs (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2110*)
Use under subjects.

\$x Study and teaching (Primary) \$x Audio-visual aids (*H 2110*)
Use under subjects.

\$x Study and teaching (Residency) (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2110*)
Use under topical headings.

\$x Study and teaching (Secondary) (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2110*)
Use under subjects.

\$x Study and teaching (Secondary) \$x Activity programs (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2110*)
Use under subjects.

\$x Study and teaching (Secondary) \$x Audio-visual aids (*H 2110*)
Use under subjects.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Study and teaching (Secondary) \$x Simulation methods (H 2110)

Use under subjects.

\$v Study guides

Use under individual examinations and types of examinations and tests for guides for preparation for those examinations.

\$v Tables (H 2160)

Use under topical headings.

\$v Tables of contents

Use under individual works (author-title or title entries) and types of publications.

\$x Taxation (May Subd Geog)

Use under topical headings for works on the taxes levied on income-producing activities or articles of value; and under classes of persons and ethnic groups for taxes levied on those groups.

\$x Taxation \$x Law and legislation (May Subd Geog)

Use under topical headings, classes of persons, and ethnic groups.

\$x Technique

Use under disciplines, especially those involving laboratory routines, for nontheoretical works describing steps to be followed in performing required tasks. Use under names of individual literary authors and under literary form headings for works on writing technique. Also use under individual art forms and headings for national or ethnic art for works on artistic technique.

See also –**Methodology**

\$x Technological innovations (May Subd Geog)

Use under topical headings for works on fundamental technological improvements or changes in materials, production methods, processes, organization, or management which increase efficiency or production.

\$v Telephone directories (H 1558)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, classes of persons, ethnic groups, and types of organizations and industries.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$v Terminology (H 2184)

Use under uniform titles of sacred works, and under classes of persons, individual Christian denominations, and topical headings for works that list or discuss words and expressions found in those works or used in those fields.

See also **–Terms and phrases** under individual languages and groups of languages.

\$x Terminology \$x Pronunciation

Use under individual sacred works and topical headings.

\$x Territories and possessions

Use under headings of the type [**topic**]-[**country**] for works discussing collectively the territories and territorial possessions of a country in relation to the topic, for example, **Postmarks–United States–Territories and possessions**. Also use under names of regions and countries for works discussing collectively the territorial possessions of the region or country.

\$x Testing (H 2186)

Use under topical headings for works on the construction, application, and results of testing pertaining to those topics. Also use under **Drugs** and individual drugs for works on testing their effectiveness and/or safety, and under types of materials, instruments, equipment, products, chemicals, animals, etc., for works on testing of those items and/or the results of testing.

See also **–Ability testing; –Evaluation**

\$v Textbooks (H 1690; H 2187)

Use under topical headings for textbooks on those topics.

\$v Texts (H 2190)

Use under individual lesser-known languages, dialects, early periods of languages, liturgy headings, and headings for vocal music for individual texts or collections of texts.

See also **–Liturgy–Texts; –Songs and music–Texts**

\$x Themes, motives

Use under names of individual persons and individual literary and art forms.

\$x Therapeutic use (May Subd Geog)

Use under topical headings for works on their use in treating disease.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Tombs (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual families, royal houses, dynasties, etc., and under classes of persons.

See also **–Tomb** under names of individual persons.

\$x Toxicology (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under individual chemicals and other substances for works on their poisonous effects on human beings or animals.

\$v Trademarks

Use under individual industries and under products and articles that may be trademarked.

\$x Translating (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2219*)

Use under uniform titles of sacred works, and under individual languages and groups of languages and topical headings.

\$v Translations (*H 2220*)

Use under names of individual literary authors, individual literary works entered under title, individual literatures, types of publications, and topical headings, for collections of translated works.

\$v Translations into [name of language] (*H 2220*)

\$x Transportation (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2225*)

Use under names of individual military services, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, types of objects, merchandise, animals, and individual wars for works on transportation of or applied to those topics. This heading may be further subdivided by place only when used under classes of persons, ethnic groups, types of objects, merchandise, animals, and individual wars.

\$x Tropical conditions

Use under topical headings for works on methods or procedures employed when working in a tropical climate.

See also **–Hot weather conditions**

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$v Union lists (H 1361)

Use under types of printed or nonbook materials for catalogs of those materials held by two or more libraries.

See also **–Bibliography–Union lists**

\$x Union territories (H 713)

Use under headings of the type **[topic]–India** for works discussing collectively the union territories of India in relation to the topic, e.g. **Land use–India–Union territories**.

\$v Use studies

Use under types of information resources, information services, library resources, and publications.

\$x Validity (May Subd Geog)

Use under individual tests and types of tests.

\$x Valuation (May Subd Geog)

Use under types of property, businesses, structures, etc., for works on the values set upon those topics or their estimated or determined market value.

\$x Vibration (May Subd Geog)

Use under types of equipment, structures, and vehicles.

Video catalogs , see **–Film catalogs**

\$x Vocational guidance (May Subd Geog) (H 2232)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and military services, and under occupations, fields of endeavor, and types of industries, trades, etc., for works describing careers in those organizations or fields and/or offering advice on how to prepare for, enter, and succeed in those careers. Use under classes of persons or occupational groups only if the heading for the corresponding field or activity does not exist or cannot be established.

\$x Voivodeships (H 713)

Use under headings of the type **[topic]–Poland** for works discussing collectively the voivodeships of Poland in relation to the topic.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Waste disposal (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of industries, industrial processes, facilities, and institutions.

\$x Waste minimization (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of industries, industrial processes, facilities, and institutions.

\$x Water-supply

Use under topical headings.

\$x Web-based instruction (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings.

\$x Weight

Use under types of objects, substances, individual animals and groups of animals, and organs and regions of the body for works on the techniques of making weight measurements of those items, or for the results of such measurements.

\$x Weights and measures

Use under types of commodities and merchandise for systems of weights and measures established for those items.

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Classes of Persons H 1100

TYPES OF HEADINGS COVERED: The subdivisions listed below may be used on a free-floating basis, as appropriate, under subject headings for classes of persons, including age and sex groups; social, economic, and political categories of persons; types of afflicted persons; members of particular religions; employees and occupational groups; etc. *Examples:* **Youth; Women; Fathers; Poor; Political prisoners; People with mental disabilities; Liver-Cancer-Patients; Catholics; Hare Krishnas; Fire fighters; Judges; Darts players; High technology industries-Employees.** The category includes headings for classes of persons that are formulated with subdivisions used under names of places or individual corporate bodies, for example, **Great Britain-Officials and employees; Stanford University-Faculty; United States. Navy-Officers.** Not included in this category are headings for social classes such as **Nobility; Middle class; Working class;** collective social groupings such as **Families; Clans; Tribes;** nor headings for ethnic groups and nationalities, such as **Hispanic Americans; Maori (New Zealand people); French.** For subdivisions used under ethnic groups and nationalities, see H 1103. However, headings for classes of persons qualified by ethnic or national adjectival qualifiers are included in this category, for example, **African American dentists; French students; Alien labor, Turkish.** Subdivisions from this list may be used under headings for groups of literary authors where there is no conflict with a subdivision designated for use under literary authors. Subdivisions specifically for use under literary authors are given in a separate list. For the additional subdivisions used under groups of literary authors, see H 1155.2. Headings for members of religious and monastic orders are also governed by a separate list. For subdivisions used under names of individual religious and monastic orders, see H 1186.

CONFLICTS: Determine if the use of a free-floating subdivision from this list conflicts with a previously established subject heading. In the event of a conflict between an established subject heading and a subdivision on this list, use the established heading unless a decision has been made to update or change all headings of that type. For example, use the established subject heading **Child abuse** rather than formulate a heading of the type **Children-Abuse of.** However, previously established headings of the type **Teachers, Training of** were changed to the form **Teachers- Training of.**

*Note: Most form subdivisions coded \$v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded \$x when assigned to works **about** the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

\$x **Abstracting and indexing** (May Subd Geog) (H 1205; H 1670)

\$v **Abstracts** (H 1205)

\$x **Abuse of** (May Subd Geog)

H 1100 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Classes of Persons

\$x **Alcohol use** (*May Subd Geog*)\$v **Anecdotes**

\$x **Anniversaries, etc.**

Use for works discussing or listing dates or commemorations of significant events for group members.

\$x **Anthropometry** (*May Subd Geog*)

Appointment, qualifications, tenure, etc., see **–Selection and appointment**

\$v **Archives** (*H 1230*)

\$x **Assassination attempts** (*May Subd Geog*)

Assaults against, see **–Violence against**

\$x **Attitudes** (*H 1955*)

Use for works on attitudes or opinions held by members of the group.

For works on public opinion about the group, see **–Public opinion**.

\$v **Autographs**

\$v **Biography** (*H 1330*)

Biography–Anniversaries, etc., see **–Anniversaries, etc.**

\$v **Biography** \$v **Dictionaries**

\$v **Biography** \$v **Dictionaries** \$x **French, [Italian, etc.]**

\$x **Biography** \$x **History and criticism**

\$v **Biography** \$v **Pictorial works** (*H 1935*)

\$x **Biography** \$v **Sources**

\$v **Blogs**

\$x **Bonding** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under occupational groups and types of employees.

\$v **Book reviews** (*H 2021*)

\$x **Books and reading** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1333*)

\$x **Care** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under classes of persons generally dependent upon the care or assistance of others for works involving personal care in general or covering several levels of care, for example, **Infants–Care; People with mental disabilities–Care**. For specific types of care, see the specific subdivision, for example, **–Home care; –Institutional care; –Medical care; –Respite care**.

Care and hygiene, see **–Care; –Health and hygiene**

Care and treatment, see **–Care**

\$v **Caricatures and cartoons**

\$v **Case studies** (*H 1350*)

\$x **Certification** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under occupational groups and types of employees.

\$x **Charitable contributions** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Civil rights** (*May Subd Geog*)

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Classes of Persons H 1100

\$v Classification

\$x Clothing (*May Subd Geog*)

See also **–Uniforms**

Clubs, see **–Societies and clubs**

\$x Collectibles (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x Colonization (*May Subd Geog*)

\$v Comic books, strips, etc.

\$x Conduct of life

Contributions, Charitable, see **–Charitable contributions**

\$v Correspondence (*H 1480*)

Costume, see **–Clothing**

\$x Counseling of (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x Crimes against (*May Subd Geog*)

Cultural life, see **–Intellectual life**

Customs, see **–Social life and customs**

\$x Death

\$x Deinstitutionalization (*May Subd Geog*)

Demand and supply, see **–Supply and demand**

\$x Dental care (*May Subd Geog*)

Devotions, see **–Prayers and devotions**

\$v Diaries (*H 1538*)

\$v Directories (*H 1558*)

Directories–Telephone, see **–Telephone directories**

\$x Discipline

\$v Discography (*H 1361*)

\$x Diseases (*May Subd Geog*)

Diseases and hygiene, see **–Diseases; –Health and hygiene**

\$x Dismissal of (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under occupational groups and types of employees.

\$v Drama (*H 1780*)

\$x Drug testing (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2186*)

\$x Drug use (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x Dwellings (*May Subd Geog*)

Use for works on residential buildings for the group from the standpoint of architecture, construction, ethnology, etc. For works on social or economic aspects of the provision of housing for the group, see **–Housing**. For works on the actual homes of individual members of the group from an architectural or historical point of view, see **–Homes and haunts**.

\$v Early works to 1800 (*H 1576*)

\$x Economic conditions (*H 1578*)

H 1100 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Classes of Persons

- \$x **Economic conditions** \$y **16th century** (H 1578)
- \$x **Economic conditions** \$y **17th century** (H 1578)
- \$x **Economic conditions** \$y **18th century** (H 1578)
- \$x **Economic conditions** \$y **19th century** (H 1578)
- \$x **Economic conditions** \$y **20th century** (H 1578)
- \$x **Economic conditions** \$y **21st century** (H 1578)
- \$x **Education** (May Subd Geog) (H 1579)
- \$x **Education (Continuing education)** (May Subd Geog) (H 1579)
- \$x **Education (Early childhood)** (May Subd Geog) (H 1579)
- \$x **Education (Elementary)** (May Subd Geog) (H 1579)
- \$x **Education (Graduate)** (May Subd Geog) (H 1579)
- \$x **Education (Higher)** (May Subd Geog) (H 1579)
- \$x **Education (Middle school)** (May Subd Geog) (H 1579)
- \$x **Education (Preschool)** (May Subd Geog) (H 1579)
- \$x **Education (Primary)** (May Subd Geog) (H 1579)
- \$x **Education (Secondary)** (May Subd Geog) (H 1579)
- \$x **Effect of automation on** (May Subd Geog) (H 1580)
 - Use under occupational groups and types of employees.
- \$x **Effect of imprisonment on** (May Subd Geog) (H 1580)
- \$x **Effect of technological innovations on** (May Subd Geog) (H 1580)
- \$x **Employment** (May Subd Geog)
- \$x **Employment** \$z **Foreign countries**
 - Employment, Supplementary*, see **–Supplementary employment**
 - Ethics, Professional*, see **–Professional ethics**
- \$x **Examinations**
 - Use only if a heading for the corresponding field or activity does not exist or cannot be established, for example, **Hospital ward clerks–Examinations**.
- \$v **Examinations, questions, etc.**
- \$x **Family relationships** (May Subd Geog)
- \$x **Fees** (May Subd Geog)
 - Use under professional groups.
 - Fellowships*, see **–Scholarships, fellowships, etc.**
- \$v **Fiction** (H 1790)
- \$x **Finance, Personal** (H 1624)
- \$v **Folklore** (H 1627)
- \$x **Gambling** (May Subd Geog)
- \$v **Genealogy** (H 1631)
- \$x **Government policy** (May Subd Geog) (H 1642)

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Corporate Bodies H 1105

TYPES OF HEADINGS COVERED: The subdivisions listed below may be used, within the limitations of the usage notes, as free-floating subdivisions under names of individual corporate bodies established as headings in the name authority file. The category includes businesses and corporations, nonprofit institutions, voluntary associations, cultural institutions, religious organizations, political parties, fraternal groups, labor organizations, professional societies, clubs, international agencies, government agencies on all levels, etc. The category also includes names of individual exhibitions, fairs, expositions, etc., but excludes names of individual conferences, congresses, or meetings. Names of jurisdictions are not included. For subdivisions used under names of jurisdictions, see H 1140. Subject headings for types of organizations are also excluded. Additional or varying subdivisions may be used under names of individual corporate bodies that fall within categories covered by specific pattern headings. Consult the appropriate instruction sheet for corporate bodies covered by pattern headings: H 1151 for individual educational institutions; H 1155 for individual legislative bodies; H 1159 for individual military services; H 1186 for individual religious and monastic orders; and H 1187 for individual Christian denominations. Some subdivisions on this list represent classes of person, for example, **–Employees** and **–Officials and employees**. See H 1100 or further subdivisions used under classes of persons.

*Note: Most form subdivisions coded \$v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded \$x when assigned to works **about** the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

\$v Abstracts (H 1205)

\$x Accounting (H 1624)

\$x Accreditation (May Subd Geog)

\$x Administration

Use under names of individual libraries and individual institutions in the spheres of health, social services, and education. Use **–Management** under names of other corporate bodies, including individual government agencies, galleries, museums, parks, etc.

\$v Anecdotes

\$x Anniversaries, etc.

\$x Appropriations and expenditures (H 1624)

Use under names of individual government agencies and institutions for discussions of their financial affairs. Use **–Finance** under names of individual government agencies for works limited to their management of nonappropriated funds. Use **–Finance** under names of other individual nongovernmental corporate bodies for discussions of their budgets and the raising and expenditure of funds.

H 1105 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Corporate Bodies

\$x Appropriations and expenditures \$x Effect of inflation on (H 1580)

\$x Archaeological collections (H 1427)

\$v Archives (H 1230)

\$x Art collections (H 1427)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies provided that the corporate body is the owner or the collector of the art and the corporate body is not itself an art gallery or museum.

\$x Art patronage

\$v Audiocassette catalogs (H 1361)

\$v Audiotape catalogs (H 1361)

\$x Auditing (H 1624)

\$x Automation

\$x Awards

\$v Bibliography

Use for lists of publications by or about the corporate body.

\$v Biography (H 1330)

Use for collective biographies that include various categories of individuals associated with the corporate body, for example, a collective biography of the faculty, students, and alumni of a university. For biographies limited to a specific category of individuals associated with a corporate body, use **–Biography** under the specific subdivision, for example **–Employees**; **–Officials and employees**; **–Presidents**; etc.

\$v Biography \$v Dictionaries (H 1540)

\$v Biography \$v Dictionaries \$x French, [Italian, etc.]

\$x Biography \$x History and criticism

\$v Biography \$v Portraits (H 1935)

\$x Bonsai collections (H 1427)

\$x Buildings

Use for works that discuss collectively the buildings occupied or owned by an individual corporate body. Establish individual named buildings according to H 1334.

\$v By-laws

\$v Calendars

\$v Caricatures and cartoons

\$v Case studies (H 1350)

\$v Catalogs (H 1360)

\$x Centennial celebrations, etc.

\$x Chaplains

See H 1100 for further subdivisions used under classes of persons.

\$x Charities

Use for works on charities sponsored by the corporate body.

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Corporate Bodies H 1105

\$v **Charters**

\$x **Claims vs. ...**

\$x **Coin collections** (H 1427)

\$x **Collectibles** (May Subd Geog)

\$v **Comic books, strips, etc.**

\$x **Communication systems**

\$v **Compact disc catalogs** (H 1361)

\$v **Constitution**

\$x **Corrupt practices**

\$x **Customer services**

\$x **Data processing**

\$x **Decision making**

\$v **Directories** (H 1558)

\$x **Discipline**

\$v **Discography** (H 1361)

\$v **Drama** (H 1780)

\$x **Elections**

\$x **Employees**

Use under names of individual nongovernmental corporate bodies. Use **–Officials and employees** under names of individual international, government, or quasi-governmental agencies.

See H 1100 for further subdivisions used under classes of persons.

\$x **Endowments**

\$x **Equipment and supplies**

\$x **Ethnological collections** (H 1427)

\$x **Ethnomusicological collections** (H 1427)

\$x **Evaluation** (H 1591)

\$x **Examinations** (H 2186)

\$x **Explosion, [date]** (H 1078; H 1560)

Also use under names of individual buildings, structures, etc.

\$v **Fiction** (H 1790)

\$x **Finance** (H 1624)

Use under names of individual nongovernmental corporate bodies for discussions of their budgets and the raising and expenditure of funds. Also use under individual government agencies for works limited to their management of nonappropriated funds.

Use **–Appropriations and expenditures** under names of individual government agencies and institutions for discussions of their financial affairs.

\$x **Fire, [date]** (H 1078; H 1560)

Also use under names of individual buildings, structures, etc.

H 1105 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Corporate Bodies

\$v **Forms**

\$v **Genealogy** (H 1631)

\$v **Guidebooks** (H 1645)

\$x **Heraldry**

\$x **Herbarium** (H 1427)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies that have herbariums for which no corporate heading exists or can be established.

\$x **Historiography**

\$x **History** (H 1647)

\$x **History** \$y **16th century** (H 1647)

\$x **History** \$y **17th century** (H 1647)

\$x **History** \$y **18th century** (H 1647)

\$x **History** \$y **19th century** (H 1647)

\$x **History** \$y **20th century** (H 1647)

\$x **History** \$y **21st century** (H 1647)

\$x **History** \$v **Chronology** (H 1367)

\$x **History** \$v **Sources** (H 2080)

\$x **Homes and haunts** (May Subd Geog)

Use under names of performing groups of all types, for example, **Beatles–Homes and haunts**, for works on the actual homes of individual members of the group. Also use the subdivision for works on the favorite places of group members or places they habitually frequent or with which they are associated.

\$v **Humor**

\$v **In art** (H 362; H 1250; H 1935)

\$x **In bookplates**

\$x **In literature** (H 362; H 1780; H 1790; H 1800)

\$x **In mass media**

\$x **In motion pictures**

\$x **Influence** (H 1675)

\$x **Information resources management** (May Subd Geog)

\$x **Information services** (H 1675.5)

\$x **Information technology**

\$x **Insignia**

\$v **Interviews** (H 1678)

Use for interviews or works about interviews with persons associated with the corporate body in general. If appropriate, use under more specific subdivisions that represent classes of persons, for example, **–Employees** or **–Presidents**.

\$x **Inventory control**

\$v **Job descriptions**

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Corporate Bodies H 1105

\$v **Juvenile drama** (H 1690)

\$v **Juvenile fiction** (H 1690)

\$v **Juvenile humor** (H 1690)

\$v **Juvenile poetry** (H 1690)

\$x **Language**

\$x **Libraries**

Use under names of individual corporate bodies having library systems of more than one library for which no corporate heading exists or can be established.

\$x **Library** (H 1427)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies provided that the corporate body is the owner or collector and the collection is not a formally organized library. If the collection is a formally organized library, it should be established as a name heading.

\$x **Library resources**

\$v **Literary collections**

\$x **Management**

Use under names of individual corporate bodies, including government agencies, galleries, museums, parks, etc. Use **–Administration** under names of individual libraries and individual institutions in the spheres of health, social services, and education.

\$x **Map collections** (H 1427)

\$v **Maps** (H 1865)

\$x **Maps** \$v **Bibliography**

\$x **Medals**

Use under names of individual corporate bodies other than military services for commemo-rative or honorary medals issued or awarded in relation to the body. Use **–Medals, badges, decorations, etc.**, under military services.

\$x **Membership**

Use for works on the conditions of belonging to the organization.

\$v **Microform catalogs** (H 1361)

\$x **Museums** (H 1916)

\$x **Musical instrument collections** (H 1427)

\$x **Name** (H 1919)

\$x **Natural history collections** (H 1427)

\$x **Numismatic collections** (H 1427)

\$x **Officials and employees**

Use under names of individual international, government, or quasi-governmental agencies. Use **–Employees** under names of individual nongovernmental corporate bodies.

See H 1100 for further subdivisions used under classes of persons.

H 1105 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Corporate Bodies

\$x **Officials and employees** \$x **Accidents**

\$x **Officials and employees** \$x **Furloughs**

\$x **Officials and employees** \$x **Leave regulations**

\$x **Officials and employees** \$x **Salaries, etc.**

\$x **Officials and employees** \$x **Salaries, etc.** \$x **Regional disparities**

\$x **Officials and employees** \$x **Turnover**

\$x **On postage stamps** (H 1945)

\$x **Organs**

Use under names of individual corporate bodies having one or more organs, especially churches, concert halls, etc.

\$x **Party work**

Use under names of individual political parties.

\$x **Performances** (May Subd Geog)

Use under performing groups of all types for works about their performances.

\$x **Personnel management**

\$x **Personnel records**

\$x **Photograph collections** (H 1427)

\$v **Pictorial works** (H 1935)

\$x **Planning**

\$v **Platforms**

Use under names of individual political parties.

\$v **Poetry** (H 1800)

\$x **Political activity** (May Subd Geog) (H 1942)

\$x **Positions**

Use under names of individual government agencies.

\$x **Poster collections** (H 1427)

\$v **Posters** (H 1945.5)

\$x **Presidents**

See H 1100 for further subdivisions used under classes of persons.

\$x **Press coverage** (May Subd Geog)

\$x **Privileges and immunities**

Use under names of individual international agencies.

\$x **Procurement**

Use under names of individual government agencies.

\$x **Public opinion** (H 1955)

\$x **Public records**

Use under names of individual government agencies.

\$x **Public relations** (May Subd Geog)

\$x **Publishing** (May Subd Geog)

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Corporate Bodies H 1105

\$x Purges

Use under names of individual political parties.

\$v Records and correspondence

\$v Registers (H 1558)

\$x Religion (H 1997)

\$x Reorganization

\$x Research (May Subd Geog) (H 2020)

\$x Research grants

\$x Rituals

Use under names of individual secret societies.

\$v Rules and practice

Use under types of, and names of individual, courts, legislative bodies, constitutional conventions, and administrative or regulatory agencies, for works containing the rules and practice of those bodies.

Do not use under individual educational institutions and military services. Use **-Regulations** instead (cf. H 1151; H 1159)

\$x Sanitation

\$x Scientific apparatus collections (H 1427)

\$x Seal

\$x Security measures

\$x Slide collections (H 1427)

\$x Societies, etc. (H 2060)

\$v Songs and music (H 2075)

\$x Songs and music \$x History and criticism (H 2075)

\$v Songs and music \$v Texts (H 2190)

\$x Stamp collections (H 1427)

\$v Statistics (H 2095)

\$v Telephone directories (H 1558)

\$v Terminology (H 2184)

\$v Tours (H 1645)

\$x Travel (May Subd Geog)

\$v Trials, litigation, etc. (H 2228)

\$x Uniforms

\$x Vocational guidance (May Subd Geog) (H 2232)

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons H 1110

8. Assignment of additional headings.

Examples: (Continued)

Title: Voyage to China.

651 #0 \$a China \$x Description and travel.
600 10 \$a Smith, John \$x Travel \$z China.

Note: Assign additional headings to biographical works and related material such as anecdotes, correspondence, diaries, interviews, portraits, etc., according to the instructions in H 1330, H 1480, H 1538, H 1678, etc.

LC practice:

9. Implementation. The procedures in this instruction sheet apply mainly to new materials being cataloged. Do not attempt to revise systematically the subject headings assigned to existing records in the LC database. Re-evaluate and revise as necessary those existing records encountered during the course of normal cataloging activities. When assigning a new subdivision from this list for the first time under the name of a person, correct records using a conflicting subdivision under that person in the LC database.

H 1110 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons

*Note: Most form subdivisions coded \$v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded \$x when assigned to works **about** the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

\$x Abdication, [date] (H 1078)

\$v Abstracts (H 1205)

Acting, see **–Dramatic production; –Stage history**

\$v Adaptations

Use under individuals such as literary authors, artists, or composers for collections of adaptations by others of their creative works or for discussions of adaptations. For collections or discussions of an individual's adaptations of themes from others, see **–Sources**.

\$x Adversaries

Use for discussions of contemporaries who opposed the person's point of view or work.

\$x Aesthetics

Use for discussions of the individual's philosophy of art or beauty, whether explicitly stated or inferred from his creative works. For the person's knowledge of the aesthetics of others, see **–Knowledge–Aesthetics**.

\$x Alcohol use

Use for works about the person's use or abuse of alcohol.

See also **–Drug use**

Allegory, see **–Symbolism**

\$x Allusions

Use for contemporary (person's life span) and early brief references to the person.

See also **–Anecdotes; –Quotations**

Ancestry, see **–Family**

\$v Anecdotes

Use for collections of brief narratives of true incidents from the individual's life.

See also **–Allusions**

Anecdotes, facetiae, satire, etc., see **–Anecdotes; –Humor**

\$x Anniversaries, etc.

Use for works about the anniversary celebration itself. Do not use for works merely published on the occasion of an anniversary.

\$x Anonyms and pseudonyms

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons H 1110

\$x Appreciation (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under persons active in the fine arts, literature, music, and performing arts for works on public response and reception, praise, etc., of the person's artistic or literary works. For works consisting of critical analysis or interpretation of artistic or literary works without biographical details, see **–Criticism and interpretation**. For works on public opinion about the person, see **–Public opinion**. For works on the person's impact on other persons, groups, movements, or national literatures, see **–Influence**. For works on systems of beliefs and rituals connected with divine persons or saints, see **–Cult**.

\$x Archaeological collections (*H 1427*)

Use for works about the person's collections of archaeological items or artifacts.

\$v Archives (*H 1230*)

Use for collections or discussions of documentary materials or records relating to the person's public or private activities, including manuscripts, diaries, correspondence, photographs, or other items of historical interest.

See also **–Correspondence**; **–Diaries**; **–Manuscripts**; **–Notebooks, sketchbooks, etc.**

\$v Art

Use under persons living before 1400 A.D. for works consisting of reproductions of works of art depicting the person, or works discussing such art. For persons living after 1400, see **–Portraits**. For pictorial representations of the person's written works, see **–Illustrations**.

\$x Art collections (*H 1427*)

Use for works about the person's own art collection.

\$x Art patronage

Use for works about the person's support and patronage of the arts.

\$x Assassination

\$x Assassination attempt, [date] (*H 1078*)

\$x Assassination attempts

Associates, see **–Friends and associates**

\$v Audio adaptations

Use for discussions or collections of audio adaptations of the person's creative works.

\$v Audiocassette catalogs (*H 1361*)

\$v Audiotape catalogs (*H 1361*)

\$x Authorship

Use for discussions on the attribution of authorship of works to the person. For discussions of a non-literary person's literary ability and accomplishments, see **–Literary art**.

See also **–Spurious and doubtful works**.

\$x Authorship \$x Collaboration

Autobiography, use *[name of person]*

H 1110 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons

\$v **Autographs**

Use for collections or discussions of the person's autographs or handwriting. *Autographs, Spurious*, see **-Forgeries**

\$x **Awards**

\$v **Bibliography** (H 1322)

Use for lists of publications by or about the person.

Biography, use [*name of person*]

\$x **Birth**

Use for works discussing the events of an individual's birth, including birthdays, the date or year of the person's birth, etc.

See also **-Birthplace**

Birthday books, see **-Calendars**

\$x **Birthplace**

\$v **Blogs**

Use for blogs by or about the person.

Bones, see **-Relics; -Tomb**

\$x **Bonsai collections** (H 1427)

Use for works about the person's collection of bonsai.

\$x **Books and reading** (H 1333)

Use for works about written material known to have been read by the person, his or her reading habits and interests, books borrowed from friends or libraries, etc.

See also **-Library**

Burial, see **-Death and burial**

\$v **Calendars**

See also **-Quotations**

Canon, see **-Authorship; -Chronology; -Criticism, Textual**

\$x **Captivity, [dates]** (H 1078)

Use for works discussing periods in which the person was held captive in bondage or confinement, especially under house arrest, as a hostage, or in battle. For works discussing periods in which the person was actually imprisoned in a correctional institution or prisoner of war camp, see **-Imprisonment**.

See also **-Exile; -Kidnapping, [date]**

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons H 1110

\$x Career in [specific field or discipline]

Use for works limited to describing events in the person's occupational life or participation in a profession or vocation. Assign an additional heading for the field. For works discussing the person's actual substantive contributions or accomplishments in a specific field or topic, whether made as a result of a vocation or an avocation, assign a heading for the field or topic and a heading for the person.

See also **–Resignation from office**

Career in politics, see **–Political activity**

\$v Caricatures and cartoons

Use for collections or discussions of caricatures or pictorial humor about the person.

See also **–Comic books, strips, etc.**

Cartoons, satire, etc., see **–Caricatures and cartoons; –Humor**

\$v Catalogs (H 1360)

Use under artists and craftspersons for works listing their art works or crafts which are available or located in particular institutions or places. Also use under persons doing business as sellers under their own names.

See also **–Audiocassette catalogs; –Audiotape catalogs; –Catalogues raisonnés; –Compact disc catalogs; –Correspondence–Microform catalogs; –Discography; –Library–Microform catalogs; –Thematic catalogs**

\$v Catalogues raisonnés

Use for comprehensive listings of an artist's or craftperson's works in one medium or all media, usually chronologically or systematically arranged, and accompanied by descriptive or critical notes.

\$x Censorship (May Subd Geog)

\$x Censures

Centennial celebrations, etc., see **–Anniversaries, etc.**

Character, see **–Ethics; –Psychology; –Religion**

\$x Characters

Use for general works about the characters of a literary author.

\$x Characters \$x Children, [Jews, Physicians, etc.]

Use for works about specific groups or categories of characters of a literary author. Assign an additional heading of the type **[group or category] in literature**.

H 1110 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons

\$x Characters \$x [*name of individual character*]

Use for works about specific named characters of a literary author. Use the name of the character in uninverted form, for example, **-Characters-Julius Caesar**. If the character is a historical person, assign an additional heading of type [*name of person*]-**In literature**, using the name as established in the authority file. If the character is fictitious, assign an additional heading of the type [*name*] (**Fictitious character**). Such phrase headings for fictitious characters must be established in accordance with H 1610.

\$x Childhood and youth

\$v Chronology (H 1367)

Use for works that list by date the events in the life of the person or the person's works, as well as discussions of the chronology of such events or works.

\$x Cipher

\$x Claims vs. ...

Use for works about the legal claims filed by the person. Complete the subdivision with the name of the jurisdiction against which the claim was brought.

\$x Clothing**\$x Coin collections** (H 1427)

Use for works about the person's coin collections.

\$x Collectibles (May Subd Geog)

Use for works about items of interest to collectors that are related to the person or portray him or topics associated with him.

See also **-Autographs; -Numismatics; -Portraits; -Posters**

\$x Comedies

Use for criticism of comedies by a literary author. Do not use under dramatists who write principally comedies.

\$v Comic books, strips, etc.

Commentaries, see **-Criticism and interpretation**

\$v Compact disc catalogs (H 1361)

Companions, see **-Friends and associates**

\$v Concordances (H 1670)

Use as a form subdivision for indexes to the principal words found in the writings of the person.

\$x Contemporaries

Use for works about other persons flourishing during the person's life, but not necessarily in close contact with the person

See also **-Adversaries; -Friends and associates**

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons H 1110

Contributions in [specific field or topic]

For works discussing the person's actual substantive contributions or accomplishments in a specific field or topic, whether made as a result of a vocation or an avocation, assign the name of the person and an additional heading for the specific topic, etc. Also assign this combination of two headings for works discussing the person's philosophy or system of thought that he or she propounded or imparted to others.

\$x Coronation

\$v Correspondence (H 1480)

Use as a form or topical subdivision for the letters from and/or to the person. Assign an additional heading for individual correspondents.

\$x Correspondence \$v Microform catalogs (H 1361)

Costume, see **-Clothing**

\$x Criticism, Textual

Use for works that aim to establish authoritative texts, for example, comparison of manuscripts and editions. Do not use for the critical explication of text.

\$x Criticism and interpretation

Use for works consisting of critical analysis or interpretation of the person's literary or artistic works or endeavors without biographical details. Use this subdivision only under persons active in the fine arts, literature, music, and performing arts. For works on public response and reception, praise, etc., of the person's artistic or literary works, see **-Appreciation**.

\$x Criticism and interpretation \$x History

\$x Criticism and interpretation \$x History \$y To 1500

\$x Criticism and interpretation \$x History \$y 16th century

\$x Criticism and interpretation \$x History \$y 17th century

\$x Criticism and interpretation \$x History \$y 18th century

\$x Criticism and interpretation \$x History \$y 19th century

\$x Criticism and interpretation \$x History \$y 20th century

\$x Criticism and interpretation \$x History \$y 21st century

Crowning, see **-Coronation**

\$x Cult (May Subd Geog)

Use under divine persons, saints, or persons worshipped for systems of beliefs or rituals associated with the person.

Date of birth, see **-Birth**

\$x Death and burial

Use for works on the person's death, funeral, or burial, including the person's last illness.

See also **-Assassination; -Tomb**

\$x Death mask

H 1110 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons

Devotional literature, see **–Prayers and devotions**

\$v Diaries (H 1538)

Use for collections or discussions of the person's diaries. Also use for individual diaries.

\$x Disciples

Use for works discussing persons who received instruction from the individual or accepted his doctrines or teachings and assisted in spreading or implementing them.

\$v Discography (H 1361)

Use for lists or catalogs of sound recordings by or about the person.

See also **–Audiotape catalogs**

Diseases, see **–Health**

\$x Divorce

\$v Drama (H 1780)

Use as a form subdivision for plays and musical dramatic works, including operas, ballets, musical comedies, etc., about the person. For criticism or discussions of plays, etc., about an individual, assign *[name of person]–In literature* as a topical heading.

\$x Dramatic production

Use under literary authors for various aspects of stage presentation, for example, acting, costume, stage setting and scenery. For historical aspects of dramatic production, see **–Stage history**. For performances of the works of composers, choreographers, and performing artists, see **–Performances**.

\$x Dramatic works

Use for criticism of dramatic works by a literary author. Do not use under authors who write principally drama.

See also **–Comedies; –Motion picture plays; –Radio and television plays; –Tragedies; –Tragicomedies**

\$x Dramaturgy

Use under composers for discussions of their technique in writing operas and other dramatic works.

\$x Drug use

Use for works about the person's use or abuse of drugs.

See also **–Alcohol use**

Dwellings, see **–Homes and haunts**

Early life, see **–Childhood and youth**

Editions, see **–Bibliography**

Education, see **–Knowledge and learning**

\$x Employees

Use for works discussing persons employed by the individual, including household servants, etc.

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons H 1110

Enemies, see **–Adversaries**

\$x Estate

Use for discussions of the aggregate of property or liabilities of all kinds that a person leaves for disposal at his death, including discussions or cases of contested estates.

See also **–Will**

\$x Ethics

Use for discussions of the individual's personal ethics and values.

See also **–Religion**

\$x Ethnological collections (H 1427)

Use for works about the person's ethnological collections.

\$x Ethnomusicological collections (H 1427)

Use for works about the person's ethnomusicological collections.

\$x Examinations

\$v Examinations, questions, etc.

\$x Exile (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x Family (H 1631)

Use for discussions of the person's family or relations with family members. Also use for genealogical works. Assign an additional heading for the name of the family.

See also **–Marriage**

\$v Fiction (H 1790)

Use as a form subdivision for works of fiction about the person. For criticism or discussions of fiction about a person, assign **[name of person]–In literature** as a topical heading.

\$x Fictional works

Use for criticism of fictional works by a literary author. Do not use under authors who write principally fiction.

See also **–Prose**

\$v Film adaptations

Use for discussions or collections of motion picture or video adaptations of the person's creative works.

Film and video adaptations, see **–Film adaptations**

\$x Finance, Personal (H 1624)

Use for discussions of the person's financial affairs.

See also **–Estate; –Will**

\$x First editions

\$x First editions \$v Bibliography

Folktales, see **–Legends**

H 1110 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons

\$x **Forgeries** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use for discussions of forgeries of the person's creative works or signature. In the case of individual forgeries, assign an additional heading for the name of the forger.

\$x **Freemasonry**

Use for works discussing the person's membership or participation in the Freemasons.

Frequented places, see **–Homes and haunts**

\$x **Friends and associates**

Use for discussions of the person's close and immediate contacts, such as companions, co-workers.

See also **–Adversaries; –Contemporaries; –Disciples; –Employees; –Family; –Relations with [specific class of persons or ethnic group]**

Funeral, see **–Death and burial**

Genealogy, see **–Family**

Glossaries, see **–Language–Glossaries, etc.**

Grave, see **–Tomb**

\$x **Hadith**

Use under imams for works on the oral tradition concerning the deeds and saying of the imam.

Handwriting, see **–Autographs**

\$x **Harmony** (*H 1438*)

Use under composers for works discussing their uses of harmony.

Haunts, see **–Homes and haunts**

\$x **Health**

Use for works about the person's state of health, including diseases suffered and accounts of specific diseases. For accounts of specific diseases assign an additional heading of the type: **[disease]–Patients–[place]–Biography**.

See also **–Alcohol use; –Drug use; –Mental health**

\$x **Herbarium** (*H 1427*)

\$x **Homes and haunts** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use for works discussing the person's homes or dwellings, favorite places, places he or she habitually frequented, or places associated with the person in some way.

See also **–Birthplace; –Palaces; –Shrines; –Travel**

\$v **Humor**

Use as a form subdivision for humorous works about the person as well as for works about the person's sense of humor or use of humor. For pictorial humor, see **–Caricatures and cartoons**.

Iconography, see **–Pictorial works**

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons H 1110

\$v **Illustrations** (H 1659)

Use for collections or discussions of pictorial representations of the person's written works. For works of art depicting the person see **–Art; –Portraits**

Imitations, see **–Parodies, imitations, etc.**

\$x **Impeachment**

\$x **Imprisonment**

Use for works discussing periods in which the person was actually imprisoned in a correctional institution or a prisoner of war camp. For works discussing periods in which the person was held captive in bondage or confinement, especially under house arrest, as a hostage, or in battle, see **–Captivity, [dates]**.

See also **–Exile**

\$x **In bookplates**

\$x **In literature** (H 362; H 1780; H 1790; H 1800)

Use for discussions of the person as a theme in belles lettres, including musical dramatic works and individual literary genres. The free-floating phrase heading [*name of person*] **in fiction, drama, poetry, etc.** was discontinued in August 1993. For works of belles-lettres about the person, or in which he or she appears as a character, assign the appropriate form subdivision, for example, **–Drama, –Fiction, –Literary collections, –Poetry**.

\$x **In mass media**

\$x **In motion pictures**

\$x **In opera**

\$x **Inauguration, [date]** (H 1078)

\$x **Influence** (H 1675)

Use for works discussing the person's impact on other persons, groups, movements, or national literatures. Assign an additional heading for the person, group, movement, or literature influenced. For works on public response and reception, praise, etc., of the artistic or literary works of persons active in the fine arts, literature, music, and performing arts, see **–Appreciation**.

\$x **Information services** (H 1675.5)

Interment, see **–Death and burial**

Interpretation, see **–Criticism and interpretation**

\$v **Interviews** (H 1678)

Use for works about interviews or works consisting of transcripts of what was said during the course of interviews or conversations with the person on one or more occasions.

Journals, see **–Diaries**

Journeys, see **–Travel**

\$v **Juvenile drama**

\$v **Juvenile fiction**

H 1110 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons

\$v **Juvenile humor**

\$v **Juvenile poetry**

\$x **Kidnapping**, [date] (H 1078)

\$x **Knowledge** \$x **Agriculture**, [America, etc.]

Use for works discussing the person's knowledge of a specific topic, whether explicitly stated or inferred from his life and work. Also use for discussions of the person's educational background in a specific topic. Assign an additional heading for the specific topic. For works on the person's opinions or attitudes on a specific topic, whether explicitly stated or inferred, assign the heading for the person and an additional heading for the specific topic. For discussions of the themes in the person's creative works, see **–Themes, motives**.

Knowledge–Religion see **–Religion**

\$x **Knowledge and learning**

Use for works about the person's formal or informal learning or scholarship in general. For knowledge or learning of specific topics, see **–Knowledge–[topic]**.

\$x **Language**

Use for works on the person's language in general on the linguistic rather than the artistic level. For works on specific linguistic topics, assign an additional heading for the topic.

See also **–Literary art; –Literary style; –Oratory; –Technique; –Versification**

\$x **Language** \$v **Glossaries, etc.** (H 1540)

Last illness, see **–Death and burial**

\$x **Last years**

See also **–Death and burial**

Leadership, Military, see **–Military leadership**

Learning, see **–Knowledge and learning** \$v **Legends** (H 1627; H 1795)

Use as a form subdivision for stories about the person which have come down from the past and which are popularly taken as historical though not verifiable.

See also **–Romances**

Letters, see **–Correspondence**

\$x **Library** (H 1427)

Use for works discussing the person's own library.

See also **–Books and reading**

\$x **Library** \$v **Marginal notes**

Use for marginal notes in works belonging to the person, whether written by the person or by others.

\$x **Library** \$v **Microform catalogs** (H 1361)

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons H 1110

\$x Library resources

Use for works describing the resources or special collections available in libraries for research or study about the person.

\$x Literary art

Use for discussions of a non-literary person's literary ability and accomplishments, including discussions of literary works by persons normally identified with another field.

Do not use under multi-career persons who are also recognized as literary authors. For discussions on the attribution of authorship of specific works to the person, see **–Authorship**.

See also **–Written works**

\$v Literary collections

Use for literary anthologies about the person that involve two or more literary forms. For anthologies in one literary form, see the form, for example, **–Drama**; **–Fiction**; **–Poetry**.

\$x Literary style

Use under literary authors for discussions of rhetoric, figures of speech, and artistic use of language in general.

See also **–Language**; **–Technique**

Litigation, see **–Trials, litigation, etc.**

\$x Manuscripts

Use for works discussing writings made by hand, typewriter, etc., by or about the person.

Do not use for individual works in manuscript form.

See also **–Archives**; **–Autographs**; **–Correspondence**; **–Diaries**; **–Notebooks, sketchbooks, etc.**

\$v Manuscripts \$v Facsimiles (H 1595)

Use as a form subdivision under composers and literary authors for facsimile editions of manuscripts of individual works or collections of works.

\$x Map collections (H 1427)

Use for works about the person's collections of maps.

Marginalia, see **–Library–Marginal notes**; **–Scholia**

\$x Marriage

See also **–Divorce**

\$x Medals

\$v Meditations

Use as a form subdivision for works containing descriptions of thoughts or reflections on the spiritual significance of the person's life or deeds.

H 1110 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons

\$x **Mental health** (H 1890)

Use for works discussing the person's state of mental health, including mental illness and accounts of specific mental disorders. For accounts of specific disorders or situations, assign an additional heading of the type: **[disease]–Patients–[place]– Biography; Psychotherapy patients–[place]–Biography; etc.**

\$x **Military leadership**

\$x **Miracles**

Use under persons to whom miracles are attributed.

\$x **Monuments** (May Subd Geog) (H 1334)

Use for works about monuments erected in honor of the person.

See also **–Museums; –Shrines; –Statues; –Tomb**

\$x **Motion picture plays**

Use for discussions of film scripts written by a literary author. Do not use under authors who write principally motion picture plays. For discussions of motion picture adaptations of the person's creative works, see **–Film adaptations**.

Motives, themes, see **–Themes, motives**

\$x **Museums** (May Subd Geog) (H 1916)

Use for works on museums devoted to the person.

See also **–Archives; –Collectibles; –Death mask; –Relics; –Shrines; –Tomb**

Music, see **–Songs and music**

\$x **Musical instrument collections** (H 1427)

Use for works about the person's collections of musical instruments.

\$v **Musical settings**

Use as a form subdivision for musical scores or sound recordings in which writings or words of the person have been set to music.

\$x **Musical settings** \$x **History and criticism**

\$x **Name** (H 1919)

Use for discussions of the history, orthography, etymology, etc., of the person's name.

See also **–Anonyms and pseudonyms; –Titles**

\$x **Natural history collections** (H 1427)

Use for works about the person's collections of natural history items or specimens.

\$v **Notebooks, sketchbooks, etc.**

Use for collections or discussions of the person's notebooks, sketchbooks, etc. Also use for individual works.

\$x **Numismatic collections** (H 1427)

Use for works about the person's numismatics collections.

See also **–Coin collections**

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons H 1110

\$x **Numismatics**

Use for works discussing the representation of the person on coins, tokens, medals, paper money, etc.

See also **–Medals**

Old age, see **–Last years**

Opponents, see **–Adversaries**

\$x **On postage stamps** (H 1945)

Use for works about the portrayal of the person on postage stamps.

\$x **On television**

Use for works that discuss television programming about the person, including dramatic or documentary shows, news programs, and advertising. Do not use for works on the person as a television actor, television host, news anchor, etc.

\$x **Oratory**

Use for works discussing the person's public speaking ability.

\$v **Outlines, syllabi, etc.**

\$x **Palaces** (May Subd Geog)

Paraphrases, see **–Adaptations**

\$x **Pardon**

Use for works about the person's legal release from the penalty of an offense.

\$v **Parodies, imitations, etc.**

Use as both a form and topical subdivision for imitations, either comic or distorted, of the person's creative works.

Patronage of the arts, see **–Art patronage**

\$x **Performances** (May Subd Geog)

Use under performing artists or performers of all types for works about their performances. Also use under composers, choreographers, etc. for works about performances of their compositions or works.

See also **–Dramatic production; –Stage history**

Personal finance, see **–Finance, Personal**

Personality, see **–Psychology**

\$x **Philosophy** (H 1929)

Use for discussions of the individual's personal philosophy. Do not use under names of philosophers.

See also **–Aesthetics; –Ethics; –Religion**

\$x **Photograph collections** (H 1427)

Use for works about the person's collections of photographs.

Pictorial humor, see **–Caricatures and cartoons**

H 1110 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons

\$v **Pictorial works** (H 1935)

Use for works consisting of pictures or visual images relating to the person.

See also **-Art**; **-Caricatures and cartoons**; **-Comic books, strips, etc.**; **-Illustrations**; **-Monuments**; **-Portraits**

Place of birth, see **-Birthplace**

Places frequented, see **-Homes and haunts**

Plots, see **-Stories, plots, etc.**

\$x **Poetic works**

Use for discussions of poetic works by a literary author. Do not use under authors who write principally poetry.

\$v **Poetry** (H 1800)

Use as a form subdivision for works of poetry about the person. For criticism or discussions of poetry about a person, assign [*name of person*]-**In literature** as a topical heading.

\$x **Political activity** (May Subd Geog)

\$x **Political and social views**

Use for works discussing the person's political and/or social views in general. Do not assign to works written by the person on political or social topics. For works on specific topics, assign the heading for the topic along with the heading for the person (subdivided by **-Political and social views**, if appropriate).

\$v **Portraits** (H 1935)

Use for collections or discussions of portraits of persons living after 1400 A.D. For persons living before 1400, see **-Art**.

See also **-Caricatures and cartoons**; **-Death mask**; **-Numismatics**; **-On postage stamps**; **-Posters**; **-Self-portraits**; **-Statues**

\$x **Poster collections** (H 1427)

Use for works about the person's collections of posters.

\$v **Posters** (H 1945.5)

Use for collections or discussions of posters depicting the person.

\$v **Prayers and devotions**

Use as a form subdivision, particularly under divine persons or saints, for works of devotions directed to those persons whose help or prayers are requested.

\$x **Prayers and devotions** \$x **History and criticism**

\$x **Pre-existence**

Use for works discussing the person's existence in a previous state or life.

Professional life, see **-Career in [specific field or discipline]**

\$x **Prophecies**

Use for works about prophecies made by the person.

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons H 1110

\$x **Prose**

Use for discussions of prose works or passages by a literary author. Do not use under authors who write principally prose.

See also **–Fictional works**

Pseudonyms, see **–Anonyms and pseudonyms**

\$x **Psychology**

Use for discussions or interpretations of the person's psychological traits, personality, character, etc.

See also **–Mental health**

\$x **Public opinion** (H 1955)

Use for works about public opinion about the person. For works on public response and reception, praise, etc. of the artistic or literary works of persons active in the fine arts, literature, music, and performing arts, see **–Appreciation**.

Public speaking, see **–Oratory**

\$v **Quotations** (H 1969)

Use for collections or discussions of quotations by or about the person.

See also **–Allusions; –Calendars**

\$x **Radio and television plays**

Use for discussions of scripts written by a literary author expressly for radio or television.

Do not use under authors who write principally radio or television plays. For discussions of audio or video adaptations of the person's creative works, see **–Audio adaptations; –Film adaptations**.

Reading habits, see **–Books and reading**

\$x **Relations with [specific class of persons or ethnic group]**

Assign an additional heading for the specific group with appropriate subdivision if necessary.

Relations with employees, see **–Employees**

Relations with family, see **–Family**

Relations with friends and associates, see **–Friends and associates**

\$x **Relations with men**

Use for works on intimate associations. For works on relations with an individual man, assign an additional heading for the man.

\$x **Relations with women**

Use for works on intimate associations. For works on relations with an individual woman, assign an additional heading for the woman.

\$x **Relics** (May Subd Geog)

Includes works on disinterred bones.

See also **–Death mask**

H 1110 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons

\$x **Religion** (H 1997)

Use for discussions of the person's religious beliefs and practices. Also includes the person's knowledge or views on religion in general. Do not use under names of theologians.

See also **-Ethics**

Residences, see **-Homes and haunts**

\$x **Resignation from office**

See also **-Abdication**, [*date*]; **-Impeachment**

Rhetoric, see **-Literary art**; **-Literary style**; **-Oratory**

\$v **Romances** (H 1795)

Use as a form subdivision under names of historical or legendary figures for medieval tales about the person based chiefly on legends of chivalric love and adventure. Do not use for romances written by the person.

Satire, see **-Humor**

Sayings, see **-Quotations**

Scholarship, see **-Knowledge and learning**

\$v **Scholia**

Use for marginal annotations, explanatory comments or remarks, especially those by early grammarians on the text of a classical work.

\$x **Scientific apparatus collections** (H 1427)

Use for works about the person's collections of scientific apparatus.

Screenplays, see **-Motion picture plays**

\$x **Seal**

Use for works discussing the devices, such as emblems, symbols, or words used by an individual to authenticate his writings or documents.

\$v **Self-portraits**

Use for reproductions or discussions of self-portraits by the artist or photographer.

Sepulchral monument, see **-Tomb**

\$v **Sermons** (H 2032)

Use as a form subdivision, particularly under divine persons or saints, for single sermons or collections of sermons about the person. *Servants*, see **-Employees**

\$x **Settings**

Use under literary authors for discussions of the settings of their works.

\$x **Sexual behavior**

\$x **Shrines** (May Subd Geog)

Use for works discussing structures or places consecrated or devoted to the person and serving as places of religious veneration or pilgrimage.

See also **-Museums**; **-Relics**

Sketchbooks, see **-Notebooks, sketchbooks, etc.**

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons H 1110

\$x Slide collections (H 1427)

Use for works about the person's collections of slides.

\$v Slides

Social views, see **–Political and social views**

\$x Societies, etc. (H 2060)

Use for works discussing organizations devoted to or specializing in the person's life or work.

\$v Songs and music (H 2075)

Use as a form subdivision for collections or single works of vocal or instrumental music about the person. For collections or single works in musical dramatic forms, such as operas, ballets, musical comedies, see **–Drama**.

\$x Songs and music \$x History and criticism (H 2075)

\$v Songs and music \$v Texts (H 2190)

\$v Sources (H 2080)

Use for collections of materials that served as the person's sources of ideas or inspiration for his endeavors or creative works and for discussions of those source materials. For collections or discussions of adaptations by others of an individual's creative works, see **–Adaptations**.

Spiritual life, see **–Religion**

\$x Spiritualistic interpretations

Use for works classed in BF1311.A-Z (Special topics, including names of individual persons)

\$v Spurious and doubtful works

Use for discussions or collections of works attributed to the person at some previous time.

Do not use for a single work.

See also **–Authorship**

\$x Stage history (May Subd Geog)

Use under literary authors for historical aspects of dramatic production. For general works on stage presentation, see **–Dramatic production**. For performances of the works of composers, choreographers, and performing artists, see **–Performances**.

\$x Stamp collections (H 1427)

Use for works about the person's stamp collections. For works about the portrayal of the person on postage stamps, see **–On postage stamps**.

\$x Statues (May Subd Geog)

Use for works discussing or containing reproductions of statues representing the person.

Stories of operas, see **–Stories, plots, etc.**

H 1110 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons

\$v **Stories, plots, etc.**

Use under composers, choreographers, and literary authors for works summarizing or discussing the stories or plots of their works.

Style, Literary, see **–Literary art; –Literary style**

\$x **Symbolism**

Use for discussions of the symbols employed by the person in his creative works.

Table-talk, see **–Quotations**

Tales, see **–Legends; –Romances**

\$x **Teachings**

Use for works discussing in general the body of knowledge, precepts, or doctrines the person taught to others.

\$x **Technique**

Use under literary authors for discussions of structural and formal elements in drama, fiction, and narrative poetry, such as asides, soliloquies, unities, scene structure, and stream-of-consciousness.

\$v **Telephone calls**

\$v **Television adaptations**

Textual criticism, see **–Criticism, Textual**

\$v **Thematic catalogs** (H 1322, H 1438)

Use under composers for lists of their musical compositions that include musical notation for the opening measures of individual works or sections of works.

\$x **Themes, motives**

Use for discussions of the themes and motives in the person's creative works. Assign an additional heading for an individual theme.

Theology, see **–Religion**

\$x **Titles**

Use for terms or phrases applied to the person as titles of address, titles of nobility, etc.

\$x **Tomb**

Use for works about the person's grave, interred bones, etc. For works on disinterred bones, see **–Relics**.

See also **–Death and burial**

\$x **Tragedies**

Use for criticism of tragedies by a literary author. Do not use under dramatists who write principally tragedies.

\$x **Tragicomedies**

Use for criticism of tragicomedies by a literary author. Do not use under dramatists who write principally tragicomedies.

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons H 1110

\$v Translations (H 2220)

Use for collections of translations of a literary author. Do not use as a form heading for single translations.

\$x Translations \$x History and criticism

\$v Translations into French, [German, etc.]

\$x Translations into French, [German, etc.] \$x History and criticism

\$x Travel (*May Subd Geog*)

Use for works about voyages and travels undertaken by the person whether written by the persons or by others. When the subdivision is further subdivided by place, assign an additional heading of the type *[place]*-**Description and travel**.

See also **-Exile**

\$v Trials, litigation, etc. (H 2228)

Use for proceedings or discussions of proceedings of civil or criminal actions to which the person is a party.

\$x Versification

Use for discussions of a literary author's technique of writing verse, including the structural composition of poetry, rhythm, rhyme, alliteration, etc.

Video adaptations, see **-Film adaptations**

Views on [specific topic]

For works discussing the person's opinions or attitudes on a specific topic, whether explicitly stated or inferred, assign the heading for the person and an additional heading for the specific topic. For works on the person's knowledge of a specific topic, whether explicitly stated or inferred from his or her life and works, see **-Knowledge-[specific topic]**.

Views on aesthetics, see **-Aesthetics**

Views on ethics, see **-Ethics**

Views on politics and society, see **-Political and social views**

Views on religion, see **-Religion**

Views on society, see **-Political and social views**

Voyages, see **-Travel**

Weblogs, see **-Blogs**

\$x Will

Use for discussions of the person's legal declaration regarding the disposition of his property or estate, including discussions or cases of contested wills.

See also **-Estate**

Writing skill, see **-Literary art**

H 1110 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons

\$x **Written works**

Use under persons active in the fine arts, music and performing arts for discussions, listings, etc., of their non-literary textual works. Do not use under persons also known as literary authors.

Youth, see –**Childhood and youth**

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Places H 1140

BACKGROUND: Until 1985, the *Subject Cataloging Manual and Library of Congress Subject Headings* provided two separate lists of subdivisions used under places, one for cities (H 1135) and one for regions, countries, etc. (H 1145). When the "city flip" was discontinued (cf. H 832), it was possible to resolve the few remaining discrepancies between the two lists and to consolidate them into a single list of subdivisions used, as applicable, under regions, countries, cities, etc. This instruction sheet superseded and replaced H 1135 and H 1145.

TYPES OF HEADINGS COVERED: The subdivisions listed below may be used, within the limitations of the usage notes, as free-floating subdivisions under headings for geographic place names including continents; regions; islands; countries; states, provinces, and equivalent jurisdictions; counties and other local jurisdictions larger than cities; and headings for metropolitan areas, suburban areas, and regions based on names of cities. They may also be used, except as noted, under names of cities established as valid AACR2 name headings, under names of extinct cities established as subject headings (in accordance with the provisions of H 715), and under names of city sections, districts, or quarters (in accordance with the provisions of H 720). Appropriate subdivisions may also be used under headings for geographic features and designated areas, including parks, reserves, gardens, streets and roads, refugee camps, etc., or regions based on geographic features following the guidelines for the assignment of such headings given in H 760. Appropriate subdivisions may also be used under names of bodies of water. For additional subdivisions used only under names of bodies of water, streams, etc., see H 1145.5. This list also covers the jurisdictional name headings established to represent the governments of tribes recognized by the United States government, for example, **Spokane Tribe of the Spokane Reservation, Washington**. This list does not cover names of celestial bodies and other astronomical features. This list also does not cover international organizations and corporate bodies that are not jurisdictions, for example, **Commonwealth of Independent States**, nor the corporate name headings that represent government agencies that control parks, etc., for example, **Yosemite National Park (Agency : U.S.)**.

CHRONOLOGICAL SUBDIVISIONS: In 1997 restrictions were lifted on use of subdivisions of the type **-16th, [17th, 18th, 19th, 20th] century** under **-Civilization** and **-Intellectual life**, thereby allowing their use under geographic headings at any level. At the same time, subdivisions of the type **-16th [17th, 18th, 19th, 20th] century** were added under the subdivisions **-Economic conditions; -History; -History, Military; -History, Naval; -Politics and government; -Social conditions; and -Social life and customs**. These subdivisions were added to facilitate subject access by time period, primarily by authorizing their free-floating use under places smaller than countries, where chronological subdivisions were previously not established or used. These free-floating century subdivisions should be used with caution under names of countries and other geographic entities where chronological subdivisions for specific time periods have been established. Assign these century subdivisions only where there is no conflict with chronological subdivisions established in the subject authority file.

H 1140 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Places

*Note: Most form subdivisions coded \$v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded \$x when assigned to works **about** the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

\$x Abstracting and indexing (May Subd Geog) (H 1205; H 1670)

\$v Abstracts (H 1205)

\$x Administrative and political divisions

\$x Aerial exploration

Do not use under cities.

\$v Aerial film and video footage

\$v Aerial photographs (H 1210.5)

\$v Aerial views (H 1210.5)

\$x Altitudes

Do not use under cities.

\$v Anecdotes

\$x Annexation to [. . .]

Do not use under cities.

\$x Anniversaries, etc.

\$x Antiquities (H 1225; H 1845)

Do not use under names of extinct cities.

\$x Antiquities \$x Collection and preservation (May Subd Geog)

Use for methods of collection.

Do not use under names of extinct cities.

\$x Antiquities \$x Collectors and collecting (May Subd Geog)

Use for collectors of antiquities and history of collecting.

Do not use under names of extinct cities.

\$x Antiquities, Byzantine (H 1225)

Do not use under names of extinct cities.

\$x Antiquities, Celtic (H 1225)

Do not use under names of extinct cities.

\$x Antiquities, Germanic (H 1225)

Do not use under names of extinct cities.

\$x Antiquities, Phoenician (H 1225)

Do not use under names of extinct cities.

\$x Antiquities, Roman (H 1225)

Do not use under names of extinct cities.

\$x Antiquities, Slavic (H 1225)

Do not use under names of extinct cities.

\$x Antiquities, Turkish (H 1225)

Do not use under names of extinct cities.

\$x Appropriations and expenditures (H 1624)

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Places H 1140

\$x Appropriations and expenditures \$x Effect of inflation on (H 1580)

\$x Archival resources (H 1230)

\$x Area

Use for descriptions of the physical area of a place as well as for works on measurement of the area of a place.

\$x Armed Forces (May Subd Geog)

Use only under countries and under regions larger than countries.

See H 1159 for further subdivisions used under military services.

\$v Audiocassette catalogs (H 1361)

\$v Audiotape catalogs (H 1361)

\$v Bio-bibliography (H 1328)

\$v Biography (H 1330; H 1845)

See also **–History–[period subdivision]–Biography**

\$v Biography \$v Anecdotes

\$v Biography \$v Caricatures and cartoons

\$v Biography \$v Dictionaries

\$v Biography \$v Dictionaries \$x French, [Italian, etc.]

\$x Biography \$x History and criticism

\$v Biography \$v Humor

\$v Biography \$v Pictorial works (H 1935)

\$v Biography \$v Portraits (H 1935)

\$x Biography \$v Sources

\$v Book reviews (H 2021)

\$x Boundaries (May Subd Geog) (H 1333.5)

\$x Buildings, structures, etc. (H 1334; H 1334.5)

Use only under cities and city sections.

\$x Buildings, structures, etc.–Conservation and restoration

Use only under cities and city sections.

\$v Calendars

\$x Capital and capitol

Do not use under cities.

\$v Census (H 1366)

\$x Census \$x Law and legislation (H 1705)

\$v Census, [date] (H 1366)

\$x Centennial celebrations, etc.

H 1140 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Places

\$v Charters

Use only under states, counties, cities, etc., of the United States and under indigenous jurisdictions of the United States.

\$v Charters, grants, privileges

Use only under countries, etc., other than the United States, and under cities other than those of the United States.

\$x Church history (H 1845)

\$x Church history \$y 16th century

\$x Church history \$y 17th century

\$x Church history \$y 18th century

\$x Church history \$y 19th century

\$x Church history \$y 20th century

\$x Church history \$y 21st century

\$x Civilization (H 1370)

\$x Civilization \$y 16th century (H 1370)

\$x Civilization \$y 17th century (H 1370)

\$x Civilization \$y 18th century (H 1370)

\$x Civilization \$y 19th century (H 1370)

\$x Civilization \$y 20th century (H 1370)

\$x Civilization \$y 21st century (H 1370)

\$x Civilization \$x Foreign influences (H 1370)

\$x Civilization \$x Philosophy

\$x Claims

\$x Claims vs. ...

\$x Climate

\$x Climate \$v Observations

\$x Colonial influence

\$x Colonies

[name of country]–Colonies may also be used under topical headings, for example, Education–Great Britain–Colonies.

See H 1149.5 for further subdivisions.

\$x Colonization

\$x Commerce (May Subd Geog)

Use for works on foreign or domestic trade of the place. For works on reciprocal trade between countries, cities, etc., assign a combination of headings:

[place A]–Commerce–[place B]; [place B]–Commerce–[place A].

\$x Commercial policy

Use only under countries and regions larger than countries.

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Places H 1140

\$v Commercial treaties (H 2227)

Use only under countries and regions larger than countries.

\$v Compact disc catalogs (H 1361)

\$x Court and courtiers

\$x Court and courtiers \$x Clothing

\$x Court and courtiers \$x Food

\$x Court and courtiers \$x Language

\$x Cultural policy

\$x Defenses

Use only under countries and regions larger than countries.

\$x Defenses \$x Economic aspects

Use only under countries and regions larger than countries.

\$x Defenses \$x Law and legislation (H 1705)

Use only under countries and regions larger than countries.

\$x Dependency on [place]

Use only under countries and regions larger than countries.

\$x Dependency on foreign countries

Use only under countries and regions larger than countries.

\$x Description and travel (H 1530; H 1845)

\$v Directories (H 1558)

\$x Discovery and exploration (H 1564)

\$x Discovery and exploration \$x French, [Spanish, etc.] (H 1564)

\$x Distances, etc.

\$v Drama (H 1780)

\$v Early works to 1800 (H 1576)

\$x Economic conditions (H 1578; H 1845)

\$x Economic conditions \$y 16th century (H 1578)

\$x Economic conditions \$y 17th century (H 1578)

\$x Economic conditions \$y 18th century (H 1578)

\$x Economic conditions \$y 19th century (H 1578)

\$x Economic conditions \$y 20th century (H 1578)

\$x Economic conditions \$y 21st century (H 1578)

\$x Economic conditions \$y [period subdivision] \$x Regional disparities

Do not use under cities.

\$x Economic conditions \$x Regional disparities

Do not use under cities.

\$x Economic integration

Use only under regions larger than countries.

\$x Economic policy

\$x Emigration and immigration (H 1581)

H 1140 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Places

\$x **Emigration and immigration** \$x **Economic aspects**

\$x **Emigration and immigration** \$x **Government policy** (H 1642)

\$x **Emigration and immigration** \$x **Religious aspects** (H 1998)

\$x **Emigration and immigration** \$x **Religious aspects** \$x **Baptists, [Catholic Church, etc.]**

\$x **Emigration and immigration** \$x **Religious aspects** \$x **Buddhism, [Christianity, etc.]**

\$x **Emigration and immigration** \$x **Social aspects**

\$x **Environmental conditions**

\$x **Eruption, [date]** (H 1078)

Use under names of volcanoes.

\$x **Eruptions**

Use under names of volcanoes.

\$x **Ethnic relations** (H 1845)

\$x **Ethnic relations** \$x **Economic aspects**

\$x **Ethnic relations** \$x **Political aspects**

\$v **Fiction** (H 1790)

\$v **Folklore** (H 1627)

Use only for works discussing folklore about the place. For works discussing folklore originating in the place use **Folklore-[place]**.

\$x **Forecasting** (H 1628)

\$x **Foreign economic relations** (May Subd Geog)

\$x **Foreign public opinion** (H 1955)

Use only under countries and regions larger than countries.

\$x **Foreign public opinion, Austrian, [British, etc.]** (H 1955)

Use only under countries and regions larger than countries.

\$x **Foreign relations** (May Subd Geog) (H 1629)

Use only under countries and regions larger than countries.

\$x **Foreign relations** \$x **Catholic Church** (H 1629)

Use only under countries and regions larger than countries.

\$x **Foreign relations** \$v **Executive agreements** (H 2227)

Use only under countries and regions larger than countries.

\$x **Foreign relations** \$x **Law and legislation** (H 1705)

Use only under countries and regions larger than countries.

\$x **Foreign relations** \$x **Philosophy**

Use only under countries and regions larger than countries.

\$x **Foreign relations** \$v **Treaties** (H 2227)

Use only under countries and regions larger than countries.

\$x **Foreign relations administration**

Use only under countries and regions larger than countries.

\$v **Gazetteers** (H 1630)

\$v **Genealogy** (H 1631; H 1845)

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Places H 1140

\$x **Genealogy** \$x **Religious aspects** (H 1998)

\$x **Geography** (H 1530)

\$x **Gold discoveries**

Do not use under cities.

\$v **Guidebooks** (H 1645)

\$x **Historical geography**

\$x **Historical geography** \$v **Maps**

\$x **Historiography**

\$x **History** (H 1647; H 1845)

\$x **History** \$y **16th century** (H 1647)

\$x **History** \$y **17th century** (H 1647)

\$x **History** \$y **18th century** (H 1647)

\$x **History** \$y **19th century** (H 1647)

\$x **History** \$y **20th century** (H 1647)

\$x **History** \$y **21st century** (H 1647)

\$x **History** \$y [*period subdivision*] \$v **Biography** (H 1330)

If no period subdivision is used, use [*place*]-**Biography**.

\$x **History** \$y [*period subdivision*] \$v **Biography** \$v **Anecdotes**

If no period subdivision is used, use [*place*]-**Biography**-**Anecdotes**.

\$x **History** \$y [*period subdivision*] \$v **Biography** \$v **Portraits**

If no period subdivision is used, use [*place*]-**Biography**-**Portraits**.

\$x **History** \$y [*period subdivision*] \$x **Biography** \$v **Sources**

If no period subdivision is used, use [*place*]-**Biography**-**Sources**.

\$x **History** \$y [*period subdivision*] \$v **Chronology** (H 1367)

\$x **History** \$y [*period subdivision*] \$x **Historiography**

If no period subdivision is used, use [*place*]-**Historiography**.

\$x **History** \$y [*period subdivision*] \$x **Philosophy**

\$x **History** \$y [*period subdivision*] \$v **Sources** (H 2080)

\$x **History** \$v **Anecdotes**

\$x **History** \$x **Autonomy and independence movements**

Do not use under cities.

\$x **History** \$v **Chronology** (H 1367)

\$x **History** \$v **Comic books, strips, etc.**

\$x **History** \$x **Errors, inventions, etc.**

\$x **History** \$v **Humor**

\$x **History** \$x **Periodization**

\$x **History** \$x **Philosophy**

\$x **History** \$v **Pictorial works** (H 1935)

\$x **History** \$x **Prophecies**

H 1140 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Places

\$x History \$x Religious aspects (H 1998)

\$x History \$x Religious aspects \$x Baptists, [Catholic Church, etc.] (H 1998)

\$x History \$x Religious aspects \$x Buddhism, [Christianity, etc.] (H 1998)

\$x History \$v Sources (H 2080)

\$x History, Local (H 1845)

Do not use under cities. Use under names of regions, countries, states, etc., for the collective histories of several local units. For the history of a single locality, use the subdivision **–History** under the name of the locality.

\$x History, Local \$x Collectibles

Do not use under names of cities.

\$x History, Military (H 1845)

\$x History, Military \$y 16th century

\$x History, Military \$y 17th century

\$x History, Military \$y 18th century

\$x History, Military \$y 19th century

\$x History, Military \$y 20th century

\$x History, Military \$y 21st century

\$x History, Military \$x Religious aspects (H 1998)

\$x History, Naval (H 1845)

\$x History, Naval \$y 16th century

\$x History, Naval \$y 17th century

\$x History, Naval \$y 18th century

\$x History, Naval \$y 19th century

\$x History, Naval \$y 20th century

\$x History, Naval \$y 21st century

\$v Humor

\$v Imprints (H 1660)

\$v In art (H 362; H 910; H 1250; H 1935)

\$x In bookplates

\$x In literature (H 362; H 910; H 1780; H 1790; H 1800)

\$x In mass media

\$x In motion pictures

\$x In popular culture

\$x Information services (H 1675.5)

\$x Intellectual life

\$x Intellectual life \$y 16th century

\$x Intellectual life \$y 17th century

\$x Intellectual life \$y 18th century

\$x Intellectual life \$y 19th century

\$x Intellectual life \$y 20th century

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Places H 1140

\$x Intellectual life \$y 21st century

\$x International status

\$v Juvenile drama (H 1690)

\$v Juvenile fiction (H 1690)

\$v Juvenile humor (H 1690)

\$v Juvenile poetry (H 1690)

\$x Kings and rulers (H 1574)

See H 1100 for further subdivisions used under classes of persons.

\$x Kings and rulers \$x Abdication

\$x Kings and rulers \$x Art patronage

\$x Kings and rulers \$x Assassination

\$x Kings and rulers \$x Brothers

See H 1100 for further subdivisions used under classes of persons.

\$x Kings and rulers \$x Children

See H 1100 for further subdivisions used under classes of persons.

\$x Kings and rulers \$x Death and burial

\$x Kings and rulers \$x Deposition

\$x Kings and rulers \$x Dwellings

\$x Kings and rulers \$x Education (H 1579)

\$x Kings and rulers \$v Folklore (H 1627)

\$x Kings and rulers \$v Genealogy (H 1631)

\$x Kings and rulers \$x Heraldry

\$x Kings and rulers \$x Mythology (H 1998)

\$x Kings and rulers \$x Paramours

See H 1100 for further subdivisions used under classes of persons.

\$x Kings and rulers \$x Religious aspects (H 1998)

\$x Kings and rulers \$x Sisters

See H 1100 for further subdivisions used under classes of persons.

\$x Kings and rulers \$x Succession

\$x Kings and rulers \$x Tombs

\$x Kings and rulers \$x Travel (May Subd Geog)

\$x Languages

See H 1154 for further subdivisions used under languages.

\$x Languages \$x Law and legislation (H 1705)

\$x Languages \$x Political aspects (H 1942)

\$x Languages \$v Texts (H 2190)

\$x Library resources

\$v Literary collections (H 910)

\$v Literatures (H 1828)

See H 1156 for further subdivisions used under literatures.

H 1140 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Places

\$v Maps (H 1865)

\$x Maps \$v Bibliography

\$v Maps \$v Early works to 1800 (H 1576)

\$v Maps \$v Facsimiles (H 1595)

\$x Military policy

Use only under countries and regions larger than countries.

\$x Military policy \$x Religious aspects (H 1998)

Use only under countries and regions larger than countries.

\$x Military relations (May Subd Geog) (H 1996)

\$x Militia

Do not use under cities.

See H 1159 for further subdivisions used under military services.

\$x Moral conditions

\$x Name (H 1919)

\$x National Guard

Use only under countries and regions larger than countries.

See H 1159 for further subdivisions used under military services.

\$x Naval militia

Do not use under cities.

\$v Newspapers (H 1920)

Use for newspapers for and about specific places.

\$x Officials and employees (May Subd Geog)

See H 1100 for further subdivisions used under classes of persons.

\$x Officials and employees \$x Accidents (May Subd Geog)

\$x Officials and employees \$z Foreign countries

\$x Officials and employees \$z Foreign countries \$x Foreign language competency

\$x Officials and employees \$x Furloughs

\$x Officials and employees \$x Leave regulations

\$x Officials and employees \$x Payroll deductions

\$x Officials and employees \$x Salaries, etc. (May Subd Geog)

\$x Officials and employees \$x Salaries, etc. \$x Regional disparities

Do not use under cities.

\$x Officials and employees \$x Turnover

\$x Officials and employees, Alien

See H 1100 for further subdivisions used under classes of persons.

\$x Officials and employees, Honorary

See H 1100 for further subdivisions used under classes of persons.

\$x Officials and employees, Retired

See H 1100 for further subdivisions used under classes of persons.

\$x On postage stamps (H 1945)

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Places H 1140

- \$x **On television**
- \$v **Photographs from space** (H 1210.5)
 - Do not use for cartographic materials.
- \$v **Pictorial works** (H 1935)
- \$v **Poetry** (H 1800)
- \$x **Politics and government** (H 1942)
- \$x **Politics and government** \$y **16th century** (H 1942)
- \$x **Politics and government** \$y **17th century** (H 1942)
- \$x **Politics and government** \$y **18th century** (H 1942)
- \$x **Politics and government** \$y **19th century** (H 1942)
- \$x **Politics and government** \$y **20th century** (H 1942)
- \$x **Politics and government** \$y **21st century** (H 1942)
- \$x **Politics and government** \$y *[period subdivision]* \$x **Philosophy**
- \$x **Politics and government** \$x **Philosophy**
- \$x **Population**
- \$x **Population** \$x **Economic aspects**
- \$x **Population** \$x **Environmental aspects**
- \$x **Population policy**
- \$v **Posters** (H 1945.5)
- \$x **Press coverage** (May Subd Geog)
- \$v **Quotations, maxims, etc.** (H 1969)
- \$x **Race relations** (H 1845)
- \$x **Race relations** \$x **Economic aspects**
- \$x **Race relations** \$x **Political aspects**
- \$v **Registers** (H 1558)
- \$x **Relations** (May Subd Geog) (H 1996)
- \$v **Relief models**
- \$x **Religion** (H 1845; H 1997)
- \$x **Religion** \$y **16th century** (H 1997)
- \$x **Religion** \$y **17th century** (H 1997)
- \$x **Religion** \$y **18th century** (H 1997)
- \$x **Religion** \$y **19th century** (H 1997)
- \$x **Religion** \$y **20th century** (H 1997)
- \$x **Religion** \$y **21st century** (H 1997)
- \$x **Religion** \$x **Economic aspects**
- \$x **Religious life and customs** (H 1845; H2016)
- \$v **Remote-sensing images**
- \$x **Research** (May Subd Geog) (H 2020)

H 1140 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Places

\$x Rural conditions

Do not use under cities.

\$x Scheduled tribes

Use only under **India** and names of states, regions, cities, etc., of India

\$x Seal

\$v Slides

\$x Social conditions (H 1845; H 2055)

\$x Social conditions \$y 16th century (H 2055)

\$x Social conditions \$y 17th century (H 2055)

\$x Social conditions \$y 18th century (H 2055)

\$x Social conditions \$y 19th century (H 2055)

\$x Social conditions \$y 20th century (H 2055)

\$x Social conditions \$y 21st century (H 2055)

\$x Social life and customs (H 1627; H 1845; H 2057)

\$x Social life and customs \$y 16th century (H 2057)

\$x Social life and customs \$y 17th century (H 2057)

\$x Social life and customs \$y 18th century (H 2057)

\$x Social life and customs \$y 19th century (H 2057)

\$x Social life and customs \$y 20th century (H 2057)

\$x Social life and customs \$y 21st century (H 2057)

\$x Social policy

\$v Songs and music (H 2075)

\$x Songs and music \$x History and criticism (H 2075)

\$v Songs and music \$v Texts (H 2190)

\$x Statistical services (H 2095)

\$x Statistical services \$x Law and legislation (H 1705)

\$v Statistics (H 2095)

\$v Statistics, Medical (H 2095)

\$v Statistics, Vital (H 2095)

\$x Strategic aspects

\$x Study and teaching (May Subd Geog) (H 2110)

Use for works on study and teaching about the place.

The free-floating subdivision **–Study and teaching**, qualified by level of study, for example, **–Study and teaching (Elementary)**; **–Study and teaching (Secondary)**, may also be used under places (cf. H 1095).

\$x Study and teaching \$x Law and legislation (May Subd Geog) (H 1705)

\$v Surveys

\$x Symbolic representation

\$v Telephone directories (H 1558)

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Places H 1140

\$v **Telephone directories** \$v **Yellow pages**

\$x **Territorial expansion**

Use only under countries and regions larger than countries.

\$x **Territories and possessions** (H 2185)

Use only under countries and regions larger than countries.

[*name of country*]-**Territories and possessions** may also be used under topical headings, for example, **Taxation-United States-Territories and possessions**.

\$x **Territories and possessions** \$x **Politics and government**

\$v **Tours** (H 1645)

\$v **Trials, litigation, etc.** (H 2228)

Also free-floating:

... Metropolitan Area ([<i>geographic qualifier</i>])	(<i>based on names of cities</i>)	(H 790)
... Suburban Area ([<i>geographic qualifier</i>])	(<i>based on names of cities</i>)	(H 790)
... Region ([<i>geographic qualifier</i>])	(<i>based on names of cities and geographic features</i>)	(H 790)

Pattern Headings: Animals H 1147

PATTERN: *Fishes; Cattle*

TYPES OF HEADINGS COVERED BY THE PATTERN: Headings for individual animals and groups of animals at all taxonomic levels, established using either common or scientific names, including animals in their natural or wild state, and those raised or cared for by humans. The pattern also covers headings for extinct and fossil animals. *Examples:* **Aedes aegypti; Aquarium fishes; Bigeye tuna; Canada goose; Dinosaurs; Diptera; Dodo; Echinodermata, Fossil; Honeybee; Laboratory animals; Marine animals; Mollusks; Pets; Predatory animals; Sheep.** Included are individual breeds or groups of domestic animals, for example, **Tennessee walking horse; Poodles;** and headings for age and sex groups, for example, **Chicks; Foals; Cows.** The general headings **Animals; Domestic animals;** and **Livestock** are excluded. The category also does not include individually named animals such as **Seattle Slew (Race horse)** or **Morris (Cat).** The subdivisions below are also not used under phrase headings of the type **[animal] as laboratory animals** or **[animal] as pets.** Instead, these phrase headings are assigned along with headings of the type **[animal]–[appropriate subdivision from the list below].** Also excluded are headings for individual microorganisms. If a subdivision from this list is needed for use under a heading for an individual microorganism, it is established editorially rather than assigned as a free-floating subdivision. The category is represented by two pattern headings: **Fishes** and **Cattle.** Establish subdivisions appropriate for animals in general under **Fishes;** establish subdivisions specific to domestic animals under **Cattle.** Subdivisions having restricted use or needing explanation are explained in endnotes.

Note: In August 1993, the pattern heading list for domestic animals, H 1148, was discontinued. The subdivisions on that list were integrated into this list, and the scope of coverage of this list was expanded to include domestic animals.

CONFLICTS: Any subdivision listed here can be used as a free-floating subdivision under any heading belonging to the category if it is appropriate and no conflict exists in the subject authority file. Subject authority records may exist for headings employing variant phrases or subdivisions equivalent to subdivisions on this list.

LC practice:

If an exceptional variant form is to be retained, make a UF reference from the equivalent free-floating subdivision form following the procedures in H 195 if the reference does not yet exist. Otherwise, submit a proposal to change the variant form along with all bibliographic records requiring correction following the procedures in H 193.

H 1147 Pattern Headings: Animals

*Note: Most form subdivisions coded \$v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded \$x when assigned to works **about** the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

\$x Abnormalities

¹ (May Subd Geog)

\$x Adaptation (May Subd Geog)

\$x Age (May Subd Geog)

\$x Age determination (May Subd Geog)

\$x Aging

\$x Aging \$x Prevention

\$x Anatomy

\$x Artificial insemination (May Subd Geog)

\$x Artificial spawning (May Subd Geog)

\$x Autopsy (May Subd Geog)

\$x Behavior (May Subd Geog)

\$x Behavior \$x Climatic factors (May Subd Geog)

\$x Behavior \$x Endocrine aspects

\$x Behavior \$x Evolution (May Subd Geog)

\$x Behavior \$x Genetic aspects (May Subd Geog)

\$v Biography

\$x Biological control (May Subd Geog)

\$x Boning (May Subd Geog)

\$x Breeding

² (May Subd Geog)

\$x Breeding \$x Selection indexes

\$x Cannibalism (May Subd Geog)

\$x Carcasses (May Subd Geog)

\$x Carcasses \$x Biodegradation (May Subd Geog)

\$x Carcasses \$x Grading (May Subd Geog)

\$x Carcasses \$x Handling (May Subd Geog)

\$x Cardiovascular system

\$v Catalogs and collections (May Subd Geog)

\$x Chemical defenses (May Subd Geog)

\$v Classification

\$x Classification \$x Molecular aspects

\$x Climatic factors (May Subd Geog)

\$x Cloning (May Subd Geog)

\$x Collection and preservation (May Subd Geog)

\$x Collection and preservation \$x Law and legislation³ (May Subd Geog)

Pattern Headings: Animals H 1147

\$x Collection and preservation \$x Licenses (May Subd Geog)
\$x Colonization (May Subd Geog)
\$x Color (May Subd Geog)
\$x Composition
\$x Condition scoring (May Subd Geog)
\$x Conformation (May Subd Geog)
\$x Conservation (May Subd Geog)
\$x Conservation \$x Law and legislation³ (May Subd Geog)
\$x Control (May Subd Geog)
\$x Control \$x Environmental aspects (May Subd Geog)
\$x Control \$x Law and legislation³ (May Subd Geog)
\$x Cooperative marketing (May Subd Geog)
\$x Counting (May Subd Geog)
\$x Cultural control (May Subd Geog)
\$x Cytogenetics
\$x Cytology
\$x Defenses (May Subd Geog)
\$x Detection (May Subd Geog)
\$x Development (May Subd Geog)
\$x Development \$x Endocrine aspects
\$x Digestive organs
\$x Diseases⁴ (May Subd Geog)
\$x Diseases \$x Alternative treatment⁴ (May Subd Geog)
\$x Diseases \$x Chemotherapy⁴ (May Subd Geog)
\$x Diseases \$x Chiropractic treatment⁴ (May Subd Geog)
\$x Diseases \$x Diagnosis⁴ (May Subd Geog)
\$x Diseases \$x Diet therapy⁴ (May Subd Geog)
\$x Diseases \$x Epidemiology⁴ (May Subd Geog)
\$x Diseases \$x Genetic aspects⁴
\$x Diseases \$x Homeopathic treatment⁴ (May Subd Geog)
\$x Diseases \$x Molecular aspects⁴ (May Subd Geog)
\$x Diseases \$x Nursing⁴ (May Subd Geog)
\$x Diseases \$x Nutritional aspects⁴ (May Subd Geog)
\$x Diseases \$x Prevention⁴
\$x Diseases \$x Treatment⁴ (May Subd Geog)
\$x Dispersal (May Subd Geog)
\$x Dissection (May Subd Geog)
\$x Dormancy⁵ (May Subd Geog)
\$x Ecology (May Subd Geog)

H 1147 Pattern Headings: Animals

\$x Ecophysiology (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of acid precipitation on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of aircraft on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of altitude on⁵ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of chemicals on⁶ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of cold on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of contaminated sediments on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of dams on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of dredging on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of drought on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of drugs on⁶ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of exotic animals on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of fires on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of fishing on⁵ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of floods on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of forest management on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of global warming on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of habitat modification on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of heavy metals on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of human beings on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of hunting on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of insecticides on⁶ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of light on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of logging on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of magnetism on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of metals on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of mining on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of music on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of noise on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of odors on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of off-road vehicles on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of oil spills on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of pesticides on⁶ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of poaching on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of pollution on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of predation on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of radiation on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of radioactive pollution on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of roads on (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x Effect of salt on (May Subd Geog)
\$x Effect of sediments on (May Subd Geog)
\$x Effect of selenium on (May Subd Geog)
\$x Effect of sound on (May Subd Geog)
\$x Effect of storms on (May Subd Geog)
\$x Effect of stray currents on (May Subd Geog)
\$x Effect of stress on (May Subd Geog)
\$x Effect of surface active agents on (May Subd Geog)
\$x Effect of temperature on (May Subd Geog)
\$x Effect of turbidity on (May Subd Geog)
\$x Effect of ultraviolet radiation on (May Subd Geog)
\$x Effect of volcanic eruptions on (May Subd Geog)
\$x Effect of water acidification on (May Subd Geog)
\$x Effect of water currents on (May Subd Geog)
\$x Effect of water levels on (May Subd Geog)
\$x Effect of water pollution on (May Subd Geog)
\$x Effect of water quality on (May Subd Geog)
\$x Effect of wind power plants on (May Subd Geog)
\$x Eggs (May Subd Geog)
\$x Eggs \$x Counting (May Subd Geog)
\$x Eggs \$x Dispersal (May Subd Geog)
\$x Eggs \$x Geographical distribution
\$x Eggs \$x Incubation (May Subd Geog)
\$x Embryology
\$x Embryos (May Subd Geog)
\$x Embryos \$x Anatomy
\$x Embryos \$x Effect of ultraviolet radiation on (May Subd Geog)
\$x Embryos \$x Motility
\$x Embryos \$x Physiology (May Subd Geog)
\$x Embryos \$x Transplantation (May Subd Geog)
\$x Endocrinology
\$x Environmental enrichment (May Subd Geog)
\$x Equipment and supplies
\$x Evolution (May Subd Geog)
\$x Exercise (May Subd Geog)
\$x Exercise \$x Physiological aspects
\$x Feed utilization efficiency (May Subd Geog)
\$x Feeding and feeds⁷ (May Subd Geog)
\$x Feeding and feeds \$x Climatic factors (May Subd Geog)

H 1147 Pattern Headings: Animals

\$x Feeding and feeds \$x Contamination (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Feeding and feeds \$v Recipes
\$x Fertility (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Fetuses
\$x Fetuses \$x Anatomy
\$x Fetuses \$x Physiology (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Flight⁵ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Fluorescence⁵ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Food⁸ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Fractures¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Functional genomics
\$x Generative organs
\$x Genetic engineering (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Genetics
\$x Genome mapping (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Geographical distribution
\$x Geographical distribution \$x Climatic factors (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Germplasm resources (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Germplasm resources \$x Cryopreservation (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Germplasm resources \$x Microbiology (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Grading (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Grooming⁹ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Growth
\$x Habitat (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Habitat \$x Conservation (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Habitat suitability index models (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Habitations¹⁰ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Handling¹¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Health (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Hibernation (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Histology
\$x Histopathology
\$x Home range (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Homing (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Host plants (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Housing¹² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Housing \$x Air conditioning¹² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Housing \$x Decoration¹² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Housing \$x Design and construction¹²

Pattern Headings: Animals H 1147

\$x Housing \$x Disinfection¹² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Housing \$x Environmental engineering¹² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Housing \$x Heating and ventilation¹² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Housing \$x Insulation¹² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Housing \$x Lighting¹² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Housing \$x Odor control¹² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Housing \$x Safety measures¹²
\$x Housing \$x Sanitation¹² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Housing \$v Specifications¹² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Housing \$x Waste disposal¹² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Hybridization (*May Subd Geog*)
\$v Identification
\$x Immunology
\$x Immunology \$x Genetic aspects
\$x Induced spawning (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Infancy (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Infections¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Infertility (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Inspection (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Integrated control (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Judging (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Jumping (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Larvae (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Larvae \$x Behavior (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Larvae \$x Defenses (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Larvae \$x Dispersal (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Larvae \$x Ecology (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Larvae \$x Effect of temperature on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Larvae \$x Effect of ultraviolet radiation on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Larvae \$x Endocrinology
\$x Larvae \$x Food (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Larvae \$x Geographical distribution
\$x Larvae \$x Microbiology (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Larvae \$x Physiology (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Law and legislation³ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Life cycles (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Locomotion (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Longevity (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Losses (*May Subd Geog*)

H 1147 Pattern Headings: Animals

\$x Manure (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Manure \$x Environmental aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Manure \$x Handling (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Marketing
\$x Marketing \$x Law and legislation³ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Marking¹³ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Mercury content (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Metabolism
\$x Metabolism \$x Climatic factors (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Metamorphosis⁵ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Metamorphosis \$x Endocrine aspects⁵
\$x Metamorphosis \$x Genetic aspects⁵
\$x Metamorphosis \$x Molecular aspects⁵
\$x Microbiology (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Migration (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Migration \$x Climatic factors (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Migration \$x Endocrine aspects
\$x Molecular aspects
\$x Molecular genetics
\$x Monitoring (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Morphogenesis (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Morphology
\$x Mortality (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Names¹⁴
\$x Nervous system
\$x Nests (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Nests \$x Abandonment (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Nests \$x Counting (*May Subd Geog*)
\$v Nomenclature¹⁵
\$v Nomenclature (Popular)¹⁶
\$v Nomenclature (Popular) \$x French, [Italian, etc.]¹⁶
\$x Nutrition (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Nutrition \$x Requirements (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Odor (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Orientation (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Origin
\$x Parasites (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Parasites \$x Biological control (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Parasites \$x Control (*May Subd Geog*)

Pattern Headings: Animals H 1147

\$x Parasites \$x Control \$x Environmental aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Parasites \$v Identification
\$x Parasites \$x Life cycles (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Parasites \$x Molecular aspects
\$x Parturition (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Pathogens (*May Subd Geog*)
\$v Pedigrees
\$v Performance records
\$x Photographic identification (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Phylogeny
\$x Phylogeny \$x Molecular aspects
\$x Physiology (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Population viability analysis (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Predators of (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Predators of \$x Control (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Predators of \$x Ecology (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Pregnancy (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Processing (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Productivity (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Psychic aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Psychological aspects¹⁷
\$x Psychological testing (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Psychology¹⁸
\$x Purchasing (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Quality (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Quarantine (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Racial analysis (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Radio tracking (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Radioactive contamination (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Recolonization (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Reintroduction (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Religious aspects
\$x Religious aspects \$x Buddhism, [Christianity, etc.]
\$x Reproduction¹⁹
\$x Reproduction \$x Climatic factors (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Reproduction \$x Effect of altitude on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Reproduction \$x Effect of light on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Reproduction \$x Effect of temperature on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Reproduction \$x Endocrine aspects

H 1147 Pattern Headings: Animals

\$x Reproduction \$x Regulation
\$x Respiration (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Respiratory organs
\$x Schooling (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Seasonal distribution (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Seasonal variations (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Selection (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Sense organs
\$x Services for (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Sexing (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Sexual behavior (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Showing (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Size (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Spawning (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Speciation (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Speed
\$x Spermatozoa
\$x Spermatozoa \$x Abnormalities (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Spermatozoa \$x Morphology
\$x Spermatozoa \$x Motility
\$x Stranding (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Summering (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Surgery (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Surgery \$x Complications (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Surgery \$x Nursing (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Symbolic aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Technological innovations (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Territoriality (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Testing
\$x Therapeutic use (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Toxicology²⁰ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Training (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Transportation (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Trypanotolerance (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Type specimens (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Utilization (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Vaccination (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Variation (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Venom²⁰ (*May Subd Geog*)

Pattern Headings: Animals H 1147

\$x Venom resistance (May Subd Geog)
\$x Vertical distribution (May Subd Geog)
\$x Virus diseases¹ (May Subd Geog)
\$x Viruses (May Subd Geog)
\$x Vocalization⁵ (May Subd Geog)
\$x Vocalization \$x Regulation⁵
\$x Water requirements (May Subd Geog)
\$x Weight
\$x Wintering (May Subd Geog)
\$x Wounds and injuries¹ (May Subd Geog)

NOTES

¹Subdivisions on this list that represent specific pathological conditions, for example, **–Abnormalities**, **–Fractures**; **–Infections**; **–Virus diseases**; **–Wounds and injuries**, may be further subdivided by subdivisions listed under the subdivision **–Diseases**, for example, **–Diseases–Diagnosis**; **Diseases–Treatment**.

²Use **–Breeding** for the controlled mating and selection of animals by humans, usually for the purpose of improving the species or breed. Use **–Reproduction** for the physiological process by which animals generate offspring of the same kind.

³See H 1154.5 for further subdivisions used under legal topics.

⁴Subdivisions listed under **–Diseases** may also be used under subdivisions on this list that represent specific pathological conditions, for example, **–Infections–Diagnosis**; **–Fractures–Treatment**.

⁵Not established under **Fishes**. Use under individual animals and groups of animals as appropriate.

⁶Assign additional headings of the type [*individual chemical*]**–Physiological effect** for individual chemicals, drugs, insecticides, pesticides, etc.

⁷Use **–Feeding and feeds** for the nutritional preparations provided for animals by humans as well as for the process of providing nourishment to them. Use **–Food** for the nutritional substances that animals find on their own or provide for themselves as well as for their food habits.

⁸Use **–Food** for the nutritional substances animals find on their own or provide for themselves as well as for their food habits. Use **–Feeding and feeds** for the nutritional preparations provided for animals by humans as well as for the process of providing nourishment to them.

⁹Use **–Grooming** for the human tending, cleaning, brushing, etc., of animals.

¹⁰Use **–Habitations** for the natural shelters and homes that animals build for themselves, such as burrows, dens, lairs, lodges, etc. Use **–Nests** under nesting animals. Use **–Housing** for the shelters and structures that humans construct and provide for wild or domestic animals.

H 1147 Pattern Headings: Animals

¹¹Not established under **Fishes**; use **Fish handling** instead. Use **-Handling** under other individual animals and groups of animals as appropriate.

¹²Use **-Housing** for the shelters and structures that humans construct and provide for wild or domestic animals. Use **-Habitations** for the natural shelters and homes that animals build for themselves.

¹³Not established under **Fishes**. Use **Fish tagging** instead. Use under individual animals and groups of animals as appropriate.

¹⁴Use **-Names** for the history, origin, customs, etc., of selecting personal names for individual animals.

¹⁵Use **-Nomenclature** for systematically derived lists of names or designations that have been formally adopted or sanctioned, or for discussions of the principles involved in the creation or application of those names to taxonomic groupings of animals.

¹⁶Use **-Nomenclature (Popular)** for lists or discussions of common names for animal groupings.

¹⁷Use **-Psychological aspects** for the influence of animals on the human mental condition or personality.

¹⁸Use **-Psychology** for the mental processes or characteristics of animals.

¹⁹Use **-Reproduction** for the physiological process by which animals generate offspring of the same kind. Use **-Breeding** for the controlled mating and selection of animals by humans, usually for the purpose of improving the species or breed.

²⁰Not established under **Fishes**. Established instead under **Poisonous fishes**. Use under individual animals and groups of animals as appropriate.

Pattern Headings: Diseases H 1150

PATTERNS: Cancer; Tuberculosis

TYPES OF HEADINGS COVERED BY THE PATTERN: Headings for individual or types of diseases and other medical conditions, including abnormalities, functional disorders, mental disorders, manifestations of disease, and wounds and injuries. The category includes animal as well as human diseases but does not cover plant diseases. *Examples:* **Bronchitis; Burns and scalds; Cleft palate; Down syndrome; Equine herpesvirus diseases; Fever in children; Gastrointestinal system-Motility-Disorders; Pain; Rabies; Sleep disorders; Schizophrenia; Sports injuries; Tuberculosis in poultry; Virus diseases.** Also included are headings for parts of the body divided by subdivisions for diseases, injuries, or other pathological conditions from the pattern list for organs and regions of the body (H 1164), for example, **Brain-Abscess; Breast-Cancer; Duodenum-Ulcers; Face-Abnormalities; Liver-Diseases; Skin-Infections; Spine-Wounds and injuries;** and headings for chemical substances subdivided by **-Metabolism-Disorders**, for example, **Calcium-Metabolism-Disorders; Proteins-Metabolism-Disorders.** Not covered are headings for medical or surgical procedures and the general heading **Diseases.**

CONFLICTS: Any subdivision listed here can be used as a free-floating subdivision under any heading belonging to the category if it is appropriate and no conflict exists in the subject authority file. Subject authority records may exist for headings employing variant phrases or subdivisions equivalent to subdivisions on this list.

LC practice:

If an exceptional variant form is to be retained, make a UF reference from the equivalent free-floating subdivision form following the procedures in H 195 if the reference does not yet exist. Otherwise, submit a proposal to change the variant form along with all bibliographic records requiring correction following the procedures in H 193.

*Note: Most form subdivisions coded \$v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded \$x when assigned to works **about** the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

- \$x Adjuvant treatment (May Subd Geog)
- \$x Age factors (May Subd Geog)
- \$x Alternative treatment (May Subd Geog)
- \$x Animal models (May Subd Geog)
- \$x Ayurvedic treatment (May Subd Geog)
- \$x Chemoprevention (May Subd Geog)
- \$x Chemotherapy (May Subd Geog)

H 1150 Pattern Headings: Diseases

\$x Chemotherapy \$x Complications (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Chiropractic treatment¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Complications² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Cryosurgery³ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Cryotherapy (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Cytodiagnosis (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Cytopathology³
\$x Diagnosis (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Diet therapy (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Diet therapy \$v Recipes
\$x Differentiation therapy (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Dosimetric treatment (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Eclectic treatment (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Endocrine aspects
\$x Endoscopic surgery³ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Environmental aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Epidemiology
\$x Etiology
\$x Exercise therapy (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Gene therapy (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Genetic aspects
\$x Histopathology
\$x Homeopathic treatment (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Hormone therapy (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Hormone therapy \$x Complications (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Hospitals (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Imaging³ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Immunodiagnosis (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Immunological aspects
\$x Immunotherapy (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Interventional radiology³ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Intraoperative radiotherapy (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Laser surgery³ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Law and legislation⁴ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Magnetic resonance imaging³ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Microbiology (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Molecular aspects
\$x Molecular diagnosis (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Mortality⁵ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Nursing (*May Subd Geog*)

Pattern Headings: Diseases H 1150

\$x Nutritional aspects (May Subd Geog)
\$x Palliative treatment (May Subd Geog)
\$x Pathogenesis⁶
\$x Pathophysiology³
\$x Patients⁷ (May Subd Geog)
\$x Photochemotherapy (May Subd Geog)
\$x Phototherapy (May Subd Geog)
\$x Physical therapy (May Subd Geog)
\$x Prevention
\$x Prevention \$x Needs assessment (May Subd Geog)
\$x Prognosis (May Subd Geog)
\$x Psychological aspects⁸
\$x Psychosomatic aspects (May Subd Geog)
\$x Radioimmunoimaging (May Subd Geog)
\$x Radioimmunotherapy (May Subd Geog)
\$x Radionuclide imaging³ (May Subd Geog)
\$x Radiotherapy (May Subd Geog)
\$x Radiotherapy \$x Complications (May Subd Geog)
\$x Relapse² (May Subd Geog)
\$x Religious aspects
\$x Religious aspects \$x Baptists, [Catholic Church, etc.]
\$x Religious aspects \$x Buddhism, [Christianity, etc.]
\$x Reoperation³ (May Subd Geog)
\$x Reporting (May Subd Geog)
\$x Risk factors (May Subd Geog)
\$x Seasonal variations (May Subd Geog)
\$x Serodiagnosis (May Subd Geog)
\$x Sex factors (May Subd Geog)
\$x Spectroscopic imaging³ (May Subd Geog)
\$x Surgery³ (May Subd Geog)
\$x Surgery \$x Complications^{2,3} (May Subd Geog)
\$x Surgery \$x Nursing³ (May Subd Geog)
\$x Susceptibility (May Subd Geog)
\$x Thermotherapy (May Subd Geog)
\$x Tomography³ (May Subd Geog)
\$x Transmission (May Subd Geog)
\$x Treatment (May Subd Geog)
\$x Treatment \$x Complications (May Subd Geog)
\$x Ultrasonic imaging³ (May Subd Geog)
\$x Vaccination (May Subd Geog)

H 1150 Pattern Headings: Diseases

\$x Vaccination \$x Complications² (*May Subd Geog*)

NOTES

¹Not established under **Cancer** or **Tuberculosis**. Use under other diseases and conditions as appropriate, for example, **Backache–Chiropractic treatment**.

²Further subdivide the subdivisions **–Complications**, **–Relapse**, **–Surgery–Complications**, and **–vaccination–Complications** by other subdivisions from this list as appropriate.

³Do not use **–Cryosurgery**, **–Cytopathology**, **–Endoscopic surgery**, **–Imaging**, **–Interventional radiology**, **–Laser surgery**, **–Magnetic resonance imaging**, **–Pathophysiology**, **–Radionuclide imaging**, **–Reoperation**, **–Spectroscopic imaging**, **–Surgery**, **–Tomography**, or **–Ultrasonic imaging** under headings of the type *[part of the body]–Diseases*. Instead assign *[part of the body]–Cryosurgery*, *[part of the body]–Pathophysiology*, *[part of the body]–Surgery*; etc. (cf. H 1164).

⁴See H 1154.5 for further subdivisions used under legal topics.

⁵Use the heading *[disease]–Mortality* instead of *[disease]–Patients–Mortality*.

⁶Not established under **Cancer**; use **Carcinogenesis** instead.

⁷Do not use **–Patients** under headings for chronic or disabling conditions for which separate headings for the afflicted persons have been established, for example, use **Blind** [*not* **Blindness–Patients**]; **Chronically ill** [*not* **Chronic diseases–Patients**]; **Deaf** [*not* **Deafness–Patients**]; **Mentally ill** [*not* **Mental illness–Patients**]. See H 1100 for further subdivisions used under classes of persons.

⁸Use the heading *[disease]–Psychological aspects* instead of *[disease]–Patients–Psychology*.

Pattern Headings: Individual Educational Institutions H 1151

PATTERN: Harvard University

TYPES OF HEADINGS COVERED BY THE PATTERN: Headings for names of individual educational institutions at all levels and of all types, including systems, which are established as corporate bodies in the name authority file. *Examples:* **Anne Arundel Community College; Muleshoe Junior High School; Medical University of South Carolina; Union Theological Seminary (New York, N.Y.); University of California (System).** The category does not include headings for types of educational institutions, which are covered by H 1151.5.

RELATION TO H 1105: Subdivisions on the list of free-floating subdivisions used under names of individual corporate bodies, H 1105, are also free-floating under individual educational institutions where there is no conflict. This list contains additional subdivisions appropriate for educational institutions.

CONFLICTS: Any subdivision listed here can be used as a free-floating subdivision under any heading belonging to this category if it is appropriate and no conflict exists in the subject authority file. Subject authority records may exist for headings employing variant phrases or subdivisions equivalent to subdivisions on this list.

LC practice:

If an exceptional variant form is to be retained, make a UF reference from the equivalent free-floating subdivision form following the procedures in H 195 if the reference does not yet exist. Otherwise, submit a proposal to change the variant form along with all bibliographic records requiring correction following the procedures in H 193.

*Note: Most form subdivisions coded \$v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded \$x when assigned to works **about** the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

\$x Administration

\$x Admission

\$v Aerial views

\$x Alumni and alumnae¹ (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x Bands

\$x Baseball

\$x Basketball

\$x Benefactors¹

\$x Buildings

H 1151 Pattern Headings: Individual Educational Institutions

\$x Buildings \$x Barrier-free design
\$x Buildings \$x Remodeling for other use
\$x Choral organizations
\$x Curricula
\$x Curricula \$v Catalogs
\$x Degrees
\$x Dissertations
\$x Dissertations \$v Style manuals
\$x Employees¹
\$x Entrance examinations
\$x Entrance requirements
\$x Entrance requirements \$x [*subject*]
\$x Examinations
\$x Examinations \$x [*subject*]
\$x Faculty¹
\$x Faculty housing
\$x Finance
\$x Football
\$x Foreign students¹
\$x Freshmen¹
\$x Funds and scholarships
\$x Golf
\$x Graduate students¹
\$x Graduate work
\$x Gymnastics
\$x Hockey
\$x Honor system
\$x Language
\$x Mascots
\$x Open admission
\$x Orchestras
\$x Parking
\$x Professional staff¹
\$x Public services
\$v Regulations
\$x Riot, [*date*]²
\$x Riots
\$x Rowing
\$x Rugby football
\$x Sanitary affairs

Pattern Headings: Individual Educational Institutions H 1151

- \$x Soccer
- \$x Sports
- \$x Student housing
- \$x Student strike, [date]²
- \$x Students¹
- \$x Students \$v Yearbooks
- \$x Swimming
- \$x Tennis
- \$x Track and field
- \$x Tuition
- \$x Undergraduates
- \$x Volleyball
- \$x Wrestling

NOTES

¹See H 1100 for further subdivisions used under classes of persons.

²See H 1078 for instructions on dates in subdivisions for specific events.

Pattern Headings: Languages H 1154

PATTERNS: English language; French language; Romance languages

TYPES OF HEADINGS COVERED BY THE PATTERN: Headings for individual languages and groups of languages, including named dialects and artificial languages. Also included are headings formed using the free-floating subdivision **–Languages** under ethnic groups and names of countries, cities, etc. *Examples:* **Danish language; Indo-European languages; Navajo language; Abung dialect; Esperanto; Indians of North America–Languages; Gabon–Languages; New York (N.Y.)–Languages.** The category does not include the heading **Language and languages.**

CONFLICTS: Any subdivision listed here can be used as a free-floating subdivision under any heading belonging to the category if it is appropriate and no conflict exists in the subject authority file. Subject authority records may exist for headings employing variant phrases or subdivisions equivalent to subdivisions on this list.

LC practice:

If an exceptional variant form is to be retained, make a UF reference from the equivalent free-floating subdivision form following the procedures in H 195 if the reference does not yet exist. Otherwise, submit a proposal to change the variant form along with all bibliographic records requiring correction following the procedures in H 193.

NEW SUBDIVISIONS: Establish new subdivisions under **English language**, if possible, or if it is not possible, under **French language** for individual languages or **Romance languages** for groups of languages. Subdivisions listed below which are not valid under **English language** are indicated by a footnote.

PERIOD SUBDIVISIONS:

1. General rule. If the period subdivisions listed below and established under **English language** are not appropriate for another language, establish the appropriate subdivision under the specific language, for example, **Russian language–To 1300.**

2. Further subdivisions. Topical and form subdivisions valid for **English language** in general may also be used under any specific period subdivision, for example, **English language–Middle English, 1100-1500–Etymology–Names.**

H 1154 Pattern Headings: Languages

PERIOD SUBDIVISIONS: (Continued)

3. Period subdivisions established under English language.

- \$y Old English, ca. 450-1100
- \$y Middle English, 1100-1500
- \$y Early modern, 1500-1700
- \$y 18th century
- \$y 19th century
- \$y 20th century
- \$y 21st century

TOPICAL AND FORM SUBDIVISIONS:

*Note: Most form subdivisions coded \$v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded \$x when assigned to works **about** the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

- \$x Ability testing (May Subd Geog)
- \$x Absolute constructions
- \$x Accents and accentuation
- \$x Acquisition
- \$x Acronyms¹
- \$x Acronyms \$v Dictionaries¹
- \$x Address, Forms of
- \$x Adjectivals
- \$x Adjective
- \$x Adverb
- \$x Adverbials
- \$x Affixes
- \$x Agreement
- \$x Alphabet
- \$x Alphabet \$x Religious aspects
- \$x Alphabet \$x Religious aspects \$x Buddhism, [Christianity, etc.]
- \$x Analogy
- \$x Anaphora
- \$x Animacy
- \$x Apheresis

Pattern Headings: Languages H 1154

- \$x Apposition
- \$x Archaisms
- \$x Article
- \$x Aspect
- \$x Aspiration
- \$x Asyndeton
- \$x Augmentatives
- \$x Auxiliary verbs
- \$x Business English²
- \$x Capitalization
- \$x Case
- \$x Case grammar
- \$x Cataphora
- \$x Categorical grammar
- \$x Causative
- \$v Classification³
- \$x Classifiers
- \$x Clauses
- \$x Clitics
- \$x Cognate words
- \$x Cognate words \$x Dutch, [German, etc.]
- \$x Collective nouns
- \$x Comparative clauses
- \$x Comparison
- \$x Complement
- \$x Composition and exercises
- \$x Compound words
- \$x Computer-assisted instruction
- \$x Computer-assisted instruction for foreign speakers
- \$x Computer-assisted instruction for French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers
- \$x Concessive clauses
- \$x Conditionals
- \$x Conjunctions
- \$x Connectives
- \$x Consonants
- \$x Context
- \$x Contraction
- \$v Conversation and phrase books
- \$v Conversation and phrase books \$x English¹

H 1154 Pattern Headings: Languages

\$v Conversation and phrase books \$x French, [Italian, etc.]
\$v Conversation and phrase books \$x Polyglot
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for accountants)
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for air pilots)
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for animal specialists)
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for bank employees)
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for businesspeople)
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for caregivers)
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for clergy, etc.)
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for computer industry employees)
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for construction industry employees)
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for correctional personnel)
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for dental personnel)
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for diplomats)
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for domestics)
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for farmers)
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for fire fighters)
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for first responders)
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for fishers)
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for flight attendants)
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for gardeners)
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for geologists)
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for gourmets)
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for homeowners)
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for landscaping industry employees)
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for lawyers)
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for library employees)
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for mathematicians)
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for medical personnel)
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for merchants)
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for meteorologists)
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for museum employees)
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for musicians, musicologists, etc.)
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for nutritionists)
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for personnel department employees)
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for petroleum workers)
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for police)
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for professionals)
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for restaurant and hotel personnel)

Pattern Headings: Languages H 1154

- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for sailors)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for school employees)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for secretaries)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for social workers)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for soldiers, etc.)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for tourism industry employees)
- \$x Coordinate constructions
- \$x Declension
- \$x Definiteness
- \$x Deixis
- \$x Deletion
- \$x Demonstratives
- \$x Denominatives
- \$x Dependency grammar
- \$x Determiners
- \$x Diacritics¹
- \$x Dialectology
- \$x Dialects (May Subd Geog)
- \$x Dialects \$v Conversation and phrase books
- \$x Dialects \$v Glossaries, vocabularies, etc.
- \$x Dialects \$x Grammar
- \$x Dialects \$x Lexicology
- \$x Dialects \$x Morphology
- \$x Dialects \$x Mutual intelligibility
- \$x Dialects \$x Phonetics
- \$x Dialects \$x Phonology
- \$x Dialects \$x Research (May Subd Geog)
- \$x Dialects \$x Research \$x Law and legislation⁴ (May Subd Geog)
- \$x Dialects \$x Syntax
- \$x Dialects \$v Texts
- \$x Diction
- \$v Dictionaries⁵
- \$v Dictionaries \$v Early works to 1700
- \$v Dictionaries \$x French, [Italian, etc.]
- \$v Dictionaries \$x Polyglot
- \$v Dictionaries, Juvenile⁵
- \$v Dictionaries, Juvenile \$x Hebrew, [Italian, etc.]
- \$x Diminutives
- \$x Diphthongs

H 1154 Pattern Headings: Languages

- \$x Direct object
- \$x Discourse analysis
- \$x Dissimilation
- \$x Elision
- \$x Ellipsis
- \$x Emphasis
- \$x Enclitics
- \$x Epithets¹
- \$x Eponyms
- \$x Ergative constructions
- \$x Errors of usage
- \$x Etymology
- \$x Etymology \$x Names
- \$x Euphemism
- \$x Exclamations
- \$v Exercises for dictation
- \$x Existential constructions
- \$x Figures of speech¹
- \$v Films for foreign speakers
- \$v Films for French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers
- \$z Foreign countries
- \$x Foreign elements
- \$x Foreign elements \$x French, [Greek, Latin, etc.]
- \$x Foreign words and phrases
- \$x Foreign words and phrases \$x Arabic, [Italian, etc.]
- \$x Function words
- \$x Gallicisms
- \$x Gemination
- \$x Gender
- \$x Gerund
- \$x Gerundive
- \$x Globalization
- \$v Glossaries, vocabularies, etc.⁵
- \$v Glossaries, vocabularies, etc. \$x Polyglot
- \$x Government
- \$x Government jargon
- \$x Gradation
- \$x Grammar
- \$x Grammar \$x Theory, etc.

Pattern Headings: Languages H 1154

- \$x Grammar, Comparative
- \$x Grammar, Comparative \$x French, [Latin, etc.]
- \$x Grammar, Generative
- \$x Grammar, Historical
- \$x Grammatical categories
- \$x Grammaticalization
- \$x Graphemics
- \$x Haplogy
- \$x Heteronyms
- \$x Hiatus
- \$x History⁶
- \$x Homonyms
- \$x Honorific
- \$x Ideophone
- \$x Idioms
- \$x Imperative
- \$x Indeclinable words
- \$x Indicative
- \$x Indirect discourse
- \$x Indirect object
- \$x Infinitival constructions
- \$x Infinitive
- \$x Infixes
- \$x Inflection
- \$x Influence on foreign languages
- \$x Influence on French, [Italian, etc.]
- \$x Intensification
- \$x Interjections
- \$x Interrogative
- \$x Intonation
- \$x Jargon
- \$x Labiality
- \$x Lexicography
- \$x Lexicology¹
- \$x Lexicology, Historical¹
- \$x Locative constructions
- \$x Machine translating (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Markedness
- \$x Medical English²

H 1154 Pattern Headings: Languages

- \$x Metonyms
- \$x Metrics and rhythmic⁷
- \$x Mimetic words
- \$x Modality
- \$x Monosyllables
- \$x Mood
- \$x Morphemics
- \$x Morphology
- \$x Morphophonemics
- \$x Morphosyntax
- \$x Mutation
- \$x Mutual intelligibility³
- \$x Nasality
- \$x Negatives
- \$x Neutralization
- \$x New words
- \$x Nominals
- \$x Noun
- \$x Noun phrase
- \$x Number
- \$x Numerals
- \$x Obscene words
- \$x Obsolete words
- \$x Onomatopoeic words
- \$x Orthography and spelling
- \$x Palatalization
- \$x Paragraphs
- \$x Parallelism
- \$x Paraphrase
- \$x Parenthetical constructions
- \$x Paronyms
- \$x Parsing
- \$x Participle
- \$x Particles
- \$x Partitives
- \$x Parts of speech
- \$x Passive voice
- \$x Pejoration
- \$x Person

Pattern Headings: Languages H 1154

- \$x Phonemics
- \$v Phonetic transcriptions
- \$x Phonetics
- \$x Phonology
- \$x Phonology, Comparative
- \$x Phonology, Comparative \$x French, [German, etc.]
- \$x Phonology, Historical
- \$x Phraseology
- \$x Polysemy
- \$x Possessives
- \$x Postpositions
- \$x Prepositional phrases
- \$x Prepositions
- \$x Pronominals
- \$x Pronoun
- \$x Pronunciation
- \$x Pronunciation by foreign speakers
- \$x Prosodic analysis
- \$x Provincialisms (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Punctuation
- \$x Quantifiers
- \$x Quantity
- \$v Readers¹
- \$v Readers \$v [form]¹
- \$v Readers \$x [topic]¹
- \$v Readers for new literates¹
- \$x Reduplication
- \$x Reference
- \$x Reflexives
- \$x Reform
- \$x Relational grammar
- \$x Relative clauses
- \$x Religious aspects
- \$x Religious aspects \$x Baptists, [Catholic Church, etc.]
- \$x Religious aspects \$x Buddhism, [Christianity, etc.]
- \$x Remedial teaching (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Resultative constructions
- \$v Reverse indexes⁵
- \$x Revival

H 1154 Pattern Headings: Languages

- \$x Rhetoric
- \$x Rhyme
- \$x Rhythm⁸
- \$x Roots
- \$v Self-instruction
- \$x Semantics
- \$x Semantics, Historical
- \$x Sentences
- \$x Sex differences (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Slang
- \$x Social aspects⁹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Sonorants
- \$v Sound recordings for foreign speakers
- \$v Sound recordings for French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers
- \$x Spectral analysis
- \$x Spoken English (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Spoken French, [Japanese, etc.]¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Standardization
- \$x Study and teaching (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Study and teaching \$x African American students
- \$x Study and teaching \$x Bilingual method
- \$x Study and teaching \$x Foreign speakers
- \$x Study and teaching \$x Foreign speakers \$x Audio-visual aids
- \$x Study and teaching \$x French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers
- \$x Study and teaching \$x Immersion method
- \$x Study and teaching (Continuing education) (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Study and teaching (Continuing education) \$x Foreign speakers
- \$x Study and teaching (Continuing education) \$x French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers
- \$x Study and teaching (Early childhood) (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Study and teaching (Early childhood) \$x Foreign speakers
- \$x Study and teaching (Early childhood) \$x French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers
- \$x Study and teaching (Elementary) (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Study and teaching (Elementary) \$x Foreign speakers
- \$x Study and teaching (Elementary) \$x French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers
- \$x Study and teaching (Higher) (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Study and teaching (Higher) \$x Foreign speakers
- \$x Study and teaching (Higher) \$x French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers
- \$x Study and teaching (Preschool) (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Study and teaching (Preschool) \$x Foreign speakers

Pattern Headings: Languages H 1154

- \$x Study and teaching (Preschool) \$x French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers
- \$x Study and teaching (Primary) (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Study and teaching (Primary) \$x Foreign speakers
- \$x Study and teaching (Primary) \$x French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers
- \$x Study and teaching (Secondary) (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Study and teaching (Secondary) \$x Foreign speakers
- \$x Study and teaching (Secondary) \$x French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers
- \$x Style
- \$x Subjectless constructions
- \$x Subjunctive
- \$x Subordinate constructions
- \$x Substitution
- \$x Suffixes and prefixes
- \$x Suppletion
- \$x Switch-reference
- \$x Syllabication
- \$x Synonyms and antonyms
- \$x Syntax
- \$x Technical English²
- \$x Technical English \$x Translating into French, [German, etc.]
- \$x Tempo
- \$x Temporal clauses
- \$x Temporal constructions
- \$x Tense
- \$v Terms and phrases⁵
- \$v Textbooks
- \$v Textbooks for English, [French, etc.] speakers¹⁰
- \$v Textbooks for foreign speakers
- \$v Textbooks for foreign speakers \$x English¹
- \$v Textbooks for foreign speakers \$x German, [Italian, etc.]
- \$v Texts¹¹
- \$x Texts \$x Dating¹¹
- \$x Topic and comment
- \$x Transcription (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Transitivity
- \$x Translating (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Translating into French, [German, etc.]
- \$x Transliteration
- \$x Transliteration into Korean, [Russian, etc.]

H 1154 Pattern Headings: Languages

\$x Transmutation

\$x Usage

\$x Variation (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x Verb

\$x Verb phrase

\$x Verbals

\$x Versification⁸

Video recordings for foreign speakers, see --**Films for foreign speakers**

Video recordings for French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers, see --**Films for French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers**

\$x Vocabulary¹

\$x Vocalization¹²

\$x Vocational guidance (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x Voice

\$x Vowel gradation

\$x Vowel reduction

\$x Vowels¹³

\$x Word formation

\$x Word frequency

\$x Word order

\$x Writing

\$x Written English² (*May Subd Geog*)

NOTES

¹Use only under languages other than English.

²Not a free-floating subdivision. Establish headings for [...] **language–Business** [...]; [...] **language–Medical** [...]; [...] **language–Technical** [...]; and [...] **language–Written** [...] as needed.

³Use only under groups of languages.

⁴See H 1154.5 for further subdivisions used under legal topics.

⁵The subdivisions **–Dictionaries**, **–Dictionaries, Juvenile**, and **–Glossaries, vocabularies, etc.** may also be used under any valid topical subdivision, as appropriate (except **–Reverse indexes** and **–Terms and phrases**), for lists of words pertaining to that topic, for example, **English language–Usage–Dictionaries**; **English language–Orthography and spelling–Glossaries, vocabularies, etc.**; **English language–Synonyms and antonyms–Dictionaries, Juvenile**. Only a few examples are printed in this list for reference.

Pattern Headings: Languages H 1154

⁶Do not further subdivide by period subdivisions.

⁷Use only under ancient languages instead of **-Rhythm** and **-Versification**, for example, **Greek language-Metrics and rhythmic**s.

⁸Under ancient languages use **-Metrics and rhythmic**s instead, for example, **Greek language-Metrics and rhythmic**s.

⁹Do not use under **[place]-Languages**. Use **Sociolinguistics-[place]** instead.

¹⁰Use only under artificial languages, for example, **Esperanto-Textbooks for Spanish speakers**.

¹¹Use according to instructions in H 2190 only under lesser-known languages, for example, **Hittite language-Texts**; under **[ethnic group]-Languages**, **[groups of Indians]-Languages** and **[place]-Languages**; or under early periods of languages (ca. pre-1500), for example, **English language-Middle English-1100-1500-Texts**.

¹²Use only under Semitic languages instead of **-Vowels**, for example, **Hebrew language-Vocalization**.

¹³Under Semitic languages use **-Vocalization** instead, for example, **Hebrew language-Vocalization**.

II. AUTHOR GROUP SUBDIVISIONS:

Use the following free-floating subdivisions under any literature or major genre of a literature for author groups that identify subordinate bodies of that literature. Any subdivision that also designates the literature is not valid under that literature, for example, use **English literature–Celtic authors**, but *not* **Celtic literature–Celtic authors**. Author group subdivisions may be followed by any topical or form subdivision from sec. III, but may not be combined in a single heading with period subdivisions from sec. I nor used after headings for literary genres with geographic subdivisions.

Following this pattern, establish new subdivisions for internal *national*, *ethnic*, or *religious* groups *only*. For other author groups, follow the pattern of the phrase headings, **Children's writings**, **English–[place]** or **Prisoners' writings**, **French–[place]**. However, for external author groups, that is, those living outside the country normally associated with the literature to which they are contributing, use simple geographic subdivision, for example, **German literature–Romania**.

The literatures of the independent nations of Africa, Asia, and the Pacific must be established with the national or regional group as an independent literature (using a parenthetical language qualifier if necessary), for example, **African literature (French)**. Since these are no longer considered subordinate groups within the general body of literature in a language, do not formulate headings such as **French literature–African authors**.

- \$x Algerian authors
- \$x Arab authors
- \$x Armenian authors
- \$x Asian authors
- \$x Bangladeshi authors
- \$x Basque authors
- \$x Bedouin authors
- \$x Bengali authors
- \$x Black authors¹
- \$x Buddhist authors
- \$x Caribbean authors
- \$x Catalan authors
- \$x Catholic authors
- \$x Celtic authors
- \$x Chinese authors
- \$x Christian authors

H 1156 Pattern Headings: Literatures

II. AUTHOR GROUP SUBDIVISIONS: (Continued)

- \$x Christian Science authors
- \$x Dalit authors
- \$x Dravidian authors
- \$x Druze authors
- \$x East Indian authors
- \$x European authors
- \$x Foreign authors
- \$x German authors
- \$x Greek authors
- \$x Hindu authors
- \$x Irish authors
- \$x Italian authors
- \$x Jaina authors
- \$x Japanese authors
- \$x Jewish authors
- \$x Jewish Christian authors
- \$x Korean authors
- \$x Kurdish authors
- \$x Kyrgyz authors
- \$x Lutheran authors
- \$x Luxembourg authors
- \$x Male authors
- \$x Maori authors
- \$x Maratha authors
- \$x Mennonite authors
- \$x Methodist authors
- \$x Minority authors
- \$x Mongolian authors
- \$x Mormon authors
- \$x Muslim authors
- \$x Orthodox Eastern authors
- \$x Parsee authors
- \$x Persian authors
- \$x Polish authors
- \$x Protestant authors
- \$x Puritan authors
- \$x Quaker authors

II. AUTHOR GROUP SUBDIVISIONS: *(Continued)*

- \$x Romanian authors
- \$x Scottish authors
- \$x Sindhi authors
- \$x South Asian authors
- \$x Swami-Narayani authors
- \$x Turkic authors
- \$x Turkish authors
- \$x Ukrainian authors
- \$x Welsh authors
- \$x White authors
- \$x Women authors
- \$x Yoruba authors

III. TOPICAL AND FORM SUBDIVISIONS:

The following free-floating subdivisions may also be used under period subdivisions from sec. I, or author group subdivisions from sec. II with the noted exceptions. They may also be used after headings for literary genres with geographic subdivisions.

*Note: Most form subdivisions coded \$v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded \$x when assigned to works **about** the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

- \$v Adaptations
- \$x African influences²
- \$x American influences²
- \$x Appreciation *(May Subd Geog)*
- \$x Arab influences²
- \$x Asian influences²
- \$v Audio adaptations
- \$x Australian influences²
- \$v Bibliography
- \$x Brazilian influences²
- \$x Buddhist influences²
- \$x Caribbean influences²
- \$x Celtic influences²
- \$x Censorship *(May Subd Geog)*
- \$x Chinese influences²

H 1156 Pattern Headings: Literatures

III. TOPICAL AND FORM SUBDIVISIONS: (Continued)

- \$x Christian influences²
- \$v Chronology
- \$x Classical influences²
- \$v Concordances
- \$x Confucian influences²
- \$x Criticism, Textual
- \$x Czech influences²
- \$x Egyptian influences²
- \$x English influences³
- \$x European influences²
- \$x Explication
- \$v Film adaptations
 - Film and video adaptations, see --Film adaptations*
- \$x Finnish influences²
- \$x First editions
- \$x First editions \$v Bibliography
- \$z Foreign countries⁴
- \$z Foreign countries \$x History and criticism⁴
- \$x Foreign influences²
- \$x French influences²
- \$x Galician influences²
- \$x German influences²
- \$x Greek influences²
- \$x Hebrew influences²
- \$x History and criticism
- \$x History and criticism \$x Theory, etc.
- \$x Hungarian influences²
- \$v Illustrations
- \$x Indian influences²
- \$x Indic influences²
- \$x Iranian influences²
- \$x Irish influences²
- \$x Islamic influences²
- \$x Italian influences²
- \$x Japanese influences²
- \$x Latin American influences²
- \$x Manuscripts

III. TOPICAL AND FORM SUBDIVISIONS: *(Continued)*

- \$x Mayan influences²
- \$x Medieval influences
- \$x Mediterranean influences²
- \$x Memorizing
- \$x Mexican influences²
- \$x Minangkabau influences²
- \$v Musical settings
- \$x Musical settings \$x History and criticism
- \$x Mycenaean influences²
- \$x Northern Thai influences²
- \$x Old Norse influences²
- \$x Periodization
- \$x Persian influences²
- \$x Polish influences²
- \$x Portuguese influences²
- \$x Provençal influences²
- \$x Publishing *(May Subd Geog)*
- \$x Roman influences²
- \$x Romanian influences²
- \$x Russian influences²
- \$x Sanskrit influences²
- \$x Scandinavian influences²
- \$x Scottish influences²
- \$x Shamanistic influences
- \$x Slavic influences²
- \$x Slovak influences²
- \$x Sources
- \$x Soviet influences²
- \$x Spanish influences²
- \$v Stories, plots, etc.
- \$x Taoist influences²
- \$v Television adaptations
- \$x Thai influences²
- \$x Themes, motives
- \$v Translations
- \$x Translations \$x History and criticism
- \$v Translations into French, [German, etc.]

H 1156 Pattern Headings: Literatures

III. TOPICAL AND FORM SUBDIVISIONS: (Continued)

\$x Translations into French, [German, etc.] \$x History and criticism

\$x Turkic influences²

\$x Ukrainian influences²

\$x Urdu influences²

\$x West Indian influences²

\$x Western influences²

\$x Yiddish influences²

NOTES

¹Not valid under headings for American literature or its genres.

²Not valid under period subdivisions or under headings for literatures identified in the subdivision.

³Not established under **English literature**. Use under other literatures as appropriate. Not valid under period subdivisions.

⁴Not valid under subdivisions for periods, groups of authors, or places.

- \$x Expansion and contraction (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Extrusion (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Fatigue (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Finishing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Finishing \$x Waste disposal (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Finishing \$x Waste minimization (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Fire testing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Fires and fire prevention (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Flammability (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Fluid dynamics
- \$x Formability
- \$x Fracture (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Galvanomagnetic properties (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Hardenability (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Heat treatment (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Heating (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Helium content (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Hot working (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Hydrogen content (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Hydrogen embrittlement
- \$x Impact testing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Inclusions (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Law and legislation² (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Machinability
- \$x Magnetic properties (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Mechanical properties
- \$x Metallography³
- \$x Metallurgy³
- \$x Microbiology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Microscopy⁴ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Microstructure
- \$x Mixing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Moisture (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Nitrogen content (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Nondestructive testing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Optical properties
- \$x Oxygen content (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Painting (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Penetration resistance

H 1158 Pattern Headings: Materials

- \$x Permeability
- \$x Physiological effect (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Pickling (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Pickling \$x By-products
- \$x Pickling \$x Waste disposal (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Plastic properties
- \$x Prices (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Pump placing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Quality control
- \$x Quenching (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Radiography (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Rapid solidification processing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Recycling (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Refining (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Religious aspects
- \$x Religious aspects \$x Buddhism, [Christianity, etc.]
- \$x Sampling (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Service life (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Skid resistance (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Solubility (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$v Specifications (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Spectra
- \$x Stress corrosion (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Surfaces
- \$x Surfaces \$x Defects (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Surfaces \$x Optical properties
- \$x Testing
- \$x Texture (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Thermal conductivity (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Thermal fatigue (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Thermal properties (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Thermomechanical properties
- \$x Thermomechanical treatment (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Toxicology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Transport properties (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Transportation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Transportation \$x Law and legislation² (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Tritium content (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Viscosity (*May Subd Geog*)

Pattern Headings: Materials H 1158

\$x War use (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x Weldability (*May Subd Geog*)

NOTES

¹Not valid under the heading **Metals**.

²See H 1154.5 for further subdivisions used under legal topics.

³Not valid under the heading **Metals**. Use only under individual metals and groups of metals.

⁴Not valid under the heading **Metals**. Use under individual materials and groups of materials other than metals.
Use **-Metallography** under individual metals and groups of metals.

Pattern Headings: Musical Compositions H 1160

8. *Lists of free-floating subdivisions.*

List 1 - Written or Printed Format of Music; Performed Version

- \$v 2-harpsichord scores
- \$v 2-organ scores
- \$v 2-piano scores
- \$v 3-piano scores
- \$v Chorus scores with organ
- \$v Chorus scores with piano
- \$v Chorus scores without accompaniment
- \$v Fake books
- \$v Lead sheets
- \$v Organ scores
- \$v Parts
- \$v Parts (solo)¹
- \$v Piano scores
- \$v Piano scores (4 hands)
- \$v Scores
- \$v Scores and parts
- \$v Scores and parts (solo)¹
- \$v Solo with harpsichord¹
- \$v Solo with harpsichord and piano¹
- \$v Solo with keyboard instrument¹
- \$v Solo with organ¹
- \$v Solo with piano¹
- \$v Solo with piano (4 hands)¹
- \$v Solo with pianos (2)¹
- \$v Solos with organ¹
- \$v Solos with piano¹
- \$v Solos with pianos (2)¹
- \$v Vocal scores with accordion
- \$v Vocal scores with continuo
- \$v Vocal scores with guitar
- \$v Vocal scores with harp
- \$v Vocal scores with harpsichord
- \$v Vocal scores with keyboard instrument
- \$v Vocal scores with organ
- \$v Vocal scores with organ and piano

H 1160 Pattern Headings: Musical Compositions

8. *Lists of free-floating subdivisions.*

List 1 - Written or Printed Format of Music; Performed Version (Continued)

- \$v Vocal scores with piano
- \$v Vocal scores with piano (4 hands)
- \$v Vocal scores with pianos (2)
- \$v Vocal scores without accompaniment

List 2 - Other Subdivisions for Musical Works

*Note: Most form subdivisions coded \$v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded \$x when assigned to works **about** the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

- \$v Cadenzas
- \$v Excerpts²
- \$v Excerpts, Arranged²
- \$v Film adaptations
- \$v Instructive editions
- \$v Instrumental settings
- \$v Juvenile³
- \$v Librettos
- \$v Scenarios
- \$v Simplified editions
- \$v Stage guides
- \$v Teaching pieces
- \$v Television adaptations
- \$v Texts⁴

List 3 - Subdivisions for Literature and Other Materials about Music

*Note: Most form subdivisions coded \$v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded \$x when assigned to works **about** the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

- \$x Analysis, appreciation
- \$v Audiocassette catalogs
- \$v Audiotape catalogs
- \$v Bibliography
- \$v Bibliography \$v Graded lists

Pattern Headings: Musical Compositions H 1160

8. *Lists of free-floating subdivisions.*

List 3 - Subdivisions for Literature and Other Materials about Music (Continued)

- \$x Characters
- \$v Discography
- \$x Discography \$x Methodology
- \$x First performances (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x History and criticism⁴
- \$x Instruction and study (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Instruction and study \$v Juvenile
- \$x Interpretation (Phrasing, dynamics, etc.)
- \$x Literary themes, motives
- \$x Performances (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Production and direction⁴ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Religious aspects^{4,5}
- \$x Religious aspects \$x Baptists, [Catholic Church, etc.]^{4,5}
- \$x Religious aspects \$x Buddhism, [Christianity, etc.]^{4,5}
- \$v Stories, plots, etc.
- \$v Thematic catalogs

NOTES

¹Valid for instrumental music only.

²Use only under headings for form or type of composition. Do not use the subdivision **-Excerpts** if the music has also been arranged for a medium of performance different from the original; instead, use the subdivision **-Excerpts, Arranged**. May be further subdivided by other musical presentation subdivisions.

³Not valid if the subdivision **-Juvenile sound recordings** (cf. H 1690) is used.

⁴Not valid under headings for which there is a separate topical heading in the singular, e.g. **Opera; Oratorio**, for resources about those musical works.

⁵Not valid under headings for forms, e.g., **Sonatas**; headings with medium of performance, e.g., **Violin music; Concertos (Flute)**; or headings where religious function is implied, e.g., **Te Deum laudamus (Music); Wedding music**.

Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops H 1180

PATTERN: Corn

TYPES OF HEADINGS COVERED BY THE PATTERN: Headings for individual plants and crops and groups of plants and crops, including algae, fungi, and lichens, at all taxonomic levels, established using either common or scientific names. The pattern also covers headings for extinct and fossil plants. *Examples:* **Camellias; Eucalyptus alba; Rice; Basidiomycetes; Forage plants; Grain; Fruit; Weeds; Yeast fungi; Davis' peppergrass; Franklinia; Gymnosperms, Fossil.** The category does not include the headings **Plants; Plants, Cultivated; Crops; and Field crops.**

CONFLICTS: Any subdivision listed here can be used as a free-floating subdivision under any heading belonging to the category if it is appropriate and no conflict exists in the subject authority file. Subject authority records may exist for headings employing variant phrases or subdivisions equivalent to subdivisions on this list.

LC practice:

If an exceptional variant form is to be retained, make a UF reference from the equivalent free-floating subdivision form following the procedures in H 195 if the reference does not yet exist. Otherwise, submit a proposal to change the variant form along with all bibliographic records requiring correction following the procedures in H 193.

*Note: Most form subdivisions coded \$v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded \$x when assigned to works **about** the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

- \$x Abnormalities (May Subd Geog)
- \$x Adaptation (May Subd Geog)
- \$x Age (May Subd Geog)
- \$x Age determination (May Subd Geog)
- \$x Aging
- \$x Aging \$x Genetic aspects
- \$x Analysis
- \$x Anatomy
- \$x Artificial growing media
- \$x Biological control (May Subd Geog)
- \$x Biotechnology (May Subd Geog)
- \$x Breeding¹ (May Subd Geog)
- \$x Carbon content (May Subd Geog)

H 1180 Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops

- \$v Catalogs and collections (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Chemical defenses (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Chemotaxonomy (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cladistic analysis (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$v Classification
- \$x Classification \$x Molecular aspects
- \$x Climatic factors (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Clones (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Clones \$x Selection (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Clones \$x Variation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Collection and preservation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Colonization (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Color (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Color \$x Fading (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Color \$x Fading \$x Control (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Color \$x Genetic aspects
- \$x Composition
- \$x Conservation² (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Conservation \$x Law and legislation^{2, 3} (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Control (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Control \$x Environmental aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Control \$x Law and legislation³ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cooling (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cooperative marketing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Counting (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cultural control (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cuttings (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cytochemistry
- \$x Cytogenetics
- \$x Cytology
- \$x Cytotaxonomy (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Defenses (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Development (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Disease and pest resistance (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Disease and pest resistance \$x Genetic aspects
- \$x Disease-free stock (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Diseases and pests (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Diseases and pests \$x Biological control (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Diseases and pests \$x Control (*May Subd Geog*)

Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops H 1180

\$x Diseases and pests \$x Control \$x Environmental aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Diseases and pests \$x Cultural control (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Diseases and pests \$x Geographical distribution
\$x Diseases and pests \$v Identification
\$x Diseases and pests \$x Integrated control (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Diseases and pests \$x Monitoring (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Diseases and pests \$x Nutritional aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Dispersal (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Dormancy (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Drought tolerance (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Drying (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Ecology (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Ecophysiology (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of acid deposition on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of acid precipitation on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of air pollution on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of air pollution on \$x Genetic aspects
\$x Effect of aluminum sulfate on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of arsenic on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of atmospheric carbon dioxide on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of atmospheric deposition on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of atmospheric nitrogen dioxide on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of atmospheric ozone on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of browsing on² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of cadmium on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of cold on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of dichlorophenoxyacetic acid on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of dredging on² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of drought on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of ethephon on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of factory and trade waste on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of ferrous sulfate on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of fires on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of fires on \$x Genetic aspects
\$x Effect of floods on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of fluorides on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of fluorine on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of forest management on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of freezes on (*May Subd Geog*)

H 1180 Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops

\$x Effect of gamma rays on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of gases on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of global warming on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of glyphosate on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of grazing on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of greenhouse gases on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of heavy metals on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of ice on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of iron on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of light on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of magnesium on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of magnetism on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of manganese on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of minerals on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of off-road vehicles on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of oxygen on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of ozone on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of pesticides on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of poaching on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of pollution on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of potassium on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of radiation on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of radioactive pollution on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of salt on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of soil acidity on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of soil moisture on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of stress on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of sulfates on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of sulfur on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of temperature on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of thermal pollution on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of trampling on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of trichloroethylene on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of turbidity on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of ultraviolet radiation on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of volcanic eruptions on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of water levels on² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of water pollution on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of water waves on² (*May Subd Geog*)

Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops H 1180

\$x Effect of wind on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Electric properties (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Embryology
\$x Embryos (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Embryos \$x Nutrition (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Equipment and supplies
\$x Evolution (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Fertilizers (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Field experiments
\$x Flowering
\$x Flowering time
\$x Frost damage (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Frost protection (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Frost resistance (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Fumigation (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Genetic engineering (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Genetics
\$x Genome mapping (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Geographical distribution
\$x Geographical distribution \$x Climatic factors (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Germplasm resources (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Germplasm resources \$v Catalogs and collections (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Germplasm resources \$x Cryopreservation (*May Subd Geog*)
\$v Gift books
\$x Grading (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Grafting (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Growing media (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Growth
\$x Habitat (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Handling (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Hardiness (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Harvesting (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Harvesting \$x Machinery (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Harvesting time (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Health (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Heirloom varieties (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Herbicide injuries (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Histochemistry
\$x Husking (*May Subd Geog*)

H 1180 Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops

\$x Hybridization (*May Subd Geog*)
\$v Identification
\$x Industrial applications (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Inoculation (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Insect resistance (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Insect resistance \$x Genetic aspects
\$x Inspection (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Integrated control (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Irrigation (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Judging (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Law and legislation³ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Life cycles (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Location (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Longevity (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Losses (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Losses \$x Prevention
\$x Machinery (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Marketing
\$x Mechanical properties
\$x Metabolism
\$x Microbiology (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Micropropagation (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Microscopy (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Milling (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Moisture (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Molecular aspects
\$x Molecular genetics
\$x Monitoring (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Morphogenesis (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Morphology
\$x Mortality (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Mulching (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Mutation breeding (*May Subd Geog*)
\$v Nomenclature
\$v Nomenclature (Popular)
\$x Nutrition (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Organic farming (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Origin
\$x Osmotic potential (*May Subd Geog*)

Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops H 1180

\$x Packaging (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Packing (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Palynotaxonomy (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Phenology
\$x Photomorphogenesis
\$x Phylogeny
\$x Phylogeny \$x Molecular aspects
\$x Physiological effect (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Physiology (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Planting (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Planting time (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Pollen (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Pollen \$x Morphology
\$x Pollen management (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Pollination (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Population regeneration² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Population viability analysis² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Postharvest diseases and injuries (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Postharvest diseases and injuries \$x Biological control (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Postharvest diseases and injuries \$x Integrated control (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Postharvest losses (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Postharvest losses \$x Prevention
\$x Postharvest physiology (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Postharvest technology (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Precooling (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Preharvest sprouting (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Preservation (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Prices (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Processing (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Processing \$x Machinery (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Propagation (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Protection (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Protection \$x Law and legislation³ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Provenance trials (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Provenances (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Pruning (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Psychic aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Quality (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Radiation preservation (*May Subd Geog*)

H 1180 Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops

- \$x Radioactive contamination (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Radiography (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Regeneration (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Reintroduction² (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Religious aspects
- \$x Religious aspects \$x Baptists, [Catholic Church, etc.]
- \$x Religious aspects \$x Buddhism, [Christianity, etc.]
- \$x Reproduction⁴
- \$x Research (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Research \$x Law and legislation¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Residues (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Ripening (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Roots
- \$x Roots \$x Anatomy
- \$x Roots \$x Diseases and pests (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Roots \$x Physiology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Rootstocks (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Sampling (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seasonal variations (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seedlings
- \$x Seedlings \$x Diseases and pests (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seedlings \$x Ecophysiology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seedlings \$x Effect of browsing on² (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seedlings \$x Evaluation
- \$x Seedlings \$x Protection (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seedlings \$x Quality (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seedlings \$x Roots
- \$x Seedlings, Bareroot
- \$x Seedlings, Container
- \$x Seeds (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$x Anatomy
- \$x Seeds \$x Certification (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$x Climatic factors (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$x Dispersal (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$x Dormancy (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$x Drying (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$x Handling (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$x Harvesting (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$v Identification

Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops H 1180

\$x Seeds \$x Marketing
\$x Seeds \$x Morphology
\$x Seeds \$x Packaging (May Subd Geog)
\$x Seeds \$x Physiology (May Subd Geog)
\$x Seeds \$x Postharvest technology (May Subd Geog)
\$x Seeds \$x Predators of (May Subd Geog)
\$x Seeds \$x Processing (May Subd Geog)
\$x Seeds \$x Quality (May Subd Geog)
\$x Seeds \$x Storage (May Subd Geog)
\$x Seeds \$x Testing
\$x Seeds \$x Viability (May Subd Geog)
\$x Selection (May Subd Geog)
\$x Sensory evaluation (May Subd Geog)
\$x Shelling (May Subd Geog)
\$x Shelling \$x Machinery (May Subd Geog)
\$x Showing (May Subd Geog)
\$x Silage (May Subd Geog)
\$x Silica content (May Subd Geog)
\$x Size (May Subd Geog)
\$x Soils (May Subd Geog)
\$x Somatic embryogenesis (May Subd Geog)
\$x Sowing (May Subd Geog)
\$x Spacing (May Subd Geog)
\$x Spores² (May Subd Geog)
\$x Spores \$x Morphology²
\$x Speciation (May Subd Geog)
\$x Storage (May Subd Geog)
\$x Storage \$x Climatic factors (May Subd Geog)
\$x Storage \$x Diseases and injuries (May Subd Geog)
\$x Technological innovations (May Subd Geog)
\$x Temperature (May Subd Geog)
\$x Therapeutic use (May Subd Geog)
\$x Therapeutic use \$x Side effects (May Subd Geog)
\$x Thermal properties (May Subd Geog)
\$x Thinning (May Subd Geog)
\$x Threshing (May Subd Geog)
\$x Threshing \$x Machinery (May Subd Geog)
\$x Toxicology (May Subd Geog)
\$x Training (May Subd Geog)

H 1180 Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops

\$x Transplanting (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Transplanting \$x Machinery (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Transportation (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Transportation \$x Diseases and injuries (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Type specimens (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Ultrastructure
\$x Utilization (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Varieties (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Variation² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Vegetative propagation (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Vertical distribution² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Virus diseases (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Viruses (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Vitality (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Water requirements (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Weed control (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Wounds and injuries (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Wounds and injuries \$x Diagnosis (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Yields (*May Subd Geog*)

NOTES

¹Use **-Breeding** for the controlled mating and selection of plants by humans, usually for the purpose of improving the species or variety. Use **-Reproduction** for the physiological processes by which plants generate offspring of the same kind.

²Not established under **Corn**. Use under other plants as appropriate, for example, **Grasses-Conservation; Forest plants-Effect of browsing on; Aquatic plants-Effect of dredging on; Helophytes-Effect of water levels on; Aquatic plants-Population regeneration; Grasses-Population viability analysis; Grasses-Reintroduction; Trees-Seedlings-Effect of browsing on; Ferns-Spores; Grasses-Variation; Phytoplankton-Vertical distribution.**

³See H 1154.5 for further subdivisions used under legal topics.

⁴Use **-Reproduction** for the physiological processes by which plants generate offspring of the same kind. Use **-Breeding** for the controlled mating and selection of plants by humans, usually for the purpose of improving the species or variety.

Pattern Headings: Land Vehicles H 1195

- \$x Fuel systems
- \$x Fuel systems \$x Vapor lock
- \$x Fuel tanks
- \$x Gas producers (May Subd Geog)
- \$x Grilles
- \$x Handling characteristics (May Subd Geog)
- \$x Heating and ventilation (May Subd Geog)
- \$x Horns
- \$x Hydraulic equipment
- \$x Ignition
- \$x Ignition \$x Electronic systems
- \$x Inspection (May Subd Geog)
- \$x Instrument panels
- \$x Instrument panels \$x Padding
- \$x Instruments
- \$x Instruments \$x Display systems
- \$x Interiors (May Subd Geog)
- \$x Lateral stability
- \$x Law and legislation¹ (May Subd Geog)
- \$x Licenses (May Subd Geog)
- \$x Licenses \$x Fees (May Subd Geog)
- \$x Lighting (May Subd Geog)
- \$x Lighting \$x Law and legislation¹ (May Subd Geog)
- \$x Locks
- \$x Lubrication
- \$x Maintenance and repair
- \$x Maintenance and repair \$x Law and legislation¹ (May Subd Geog)
- \$x Marketing
- \$x Materials (May Subd Geog)
- \$x Materials \$x Dynamic testing (May Subd Geog)
- \$x Misfueling (May Subd Geog)
- \$x Models (May Subd Geog)
- \$x Models \$x Finishing (May Subd Geog)
- \$x Models \$x Radio control (May Subd Geog)
- \$x Motors
- \$x Motors \$x Bearings (May Subd Geog)
- \$x Motors \$x Camshafts
- \$x Motors \$x Carburetors
- \$x Motors \$x Combustion (May Subd Geog)

H 1195 Pattern Headings: Land Vehicles

- \$x Motors \$x Computer control systems (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Motors \$x Control systems
- \$x Motors \$x Cooling (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Motors \$x Cooling systems (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Motors \$x Crankshafts
- \$x Motors \$x Cylinder blocks
- \$x Motors \$x Cylinder heads (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Motors \$x Cylinders
- \$x Motors \$x Electronic fuel injection systems
- \$x Motors \$x Exhaust gas (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Motors \$x Exhaust gas \$x Law and legislation¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Motors \$x Exhaust systems
- \$x Motors \$x Fuel injection systems
- \$x Motors \$x Knock (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Motors \$x Lubrication systems (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Motors \$x Modification (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Motors \$x Mufflers
- \$x Motors \$x Mufflers \$x Acoustic properties (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Motors \$x Oil filters
- \$x Motors \$x Parts (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Motors \$x Pistons and piston rings
- \$x Motors \$x Soundproofing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Motors \$x Superchargers
- \$x Motors \$x Thermodynamics
- \$x Motors \$x Timing belts (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Motors \$x Turbochargers
- \$x Motors \$x Valves (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Motors \$x Vibration (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Motors (Compressed-gas) (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Motors (Diesel)
- \$x Motors (Diesel) \$x Exhaust gas (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Motors (Liquid nitrogen) (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Motors (Two-stroke cycle)
- \$x Occupant restraint systems (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Off-road operation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Painting (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Parts (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Parts \$x Law and legislation¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Performance (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Pneumatic equipment
- \$x Pollution control devices

Pattern Headings: Land Vehicles H 1195

\$x Pollution control devices \$x Law and legislation¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Power trains (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Prices (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Prices \$x Law and legislation¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Protection (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Radiator ornaments
\$x Radiators
\$x Radio antennas
\$x Radio equipment
\$x Radio equipment \$x Security measures (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Registration and transfer (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Registration and transfer \$x Fees (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Retarders (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Riding qualities (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Rollover protective structures (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Safety appliances (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Scrapping (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Seat belts
\$x Seat belts \$x Law and legislation¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Seats (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Serial numbers
\$x Service life (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Shock absorbers
\$x Sizes (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Skidding (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Snow protection and removal (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Speed
\$x Spray control (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Springs and suspension (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Stability
\$x Starting devices (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Steering-gear
\$x Tires
\$x Tires \$x Inflation pressure
\$x Tires \$x Repairing (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Towing (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Traction (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Transaxles
\$x Transmission devices

H 1195 Pattern Headings: Land Vehicles

\$x Transmission devices, Automatic
\$x Transmission devices, Automatic \$x Parts (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Transportation (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Transportation \$x Law and legislation¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Upholstery (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Vibration (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Welding (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Wheels
\$x Wheels \$x Alignment (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Wheels \$x Balancing (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Windows and windshields (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Windows and windshields \$x Law and legislation¹ (*May Subd Geog*)

NOTE

¹See H 1154.5 for further subdivisions used under legal topics.

BACKGROUND: *This instruction sheet provides guidelines on the usage of the heading **Arabs** and the terms **Arab**, **Arabian**, and **Arabic** as qualifiers in subject headings, as well as the heading and qualifier **Arab countries**.*

1. Arabs. Use the heading **Arabs** (*May Subd Geog*) for comprehensive works on the Arabs as an ethnic group.

2. Arab. Use the adjective **Arab** to qualify headings that designate Arabs as an *ethnic group*, for example, **Cooking, Arab**.

3. Arabian. Use the adjective **Arabian** to qualify headings that designate the Arabian Peninsula as a *place*, for example, **Goddesses, Arabian**.

4. Arabic. Use the adjective **Arabic** to qualify headings that designate the Arabic *language*, for example, **Calligraphy, Arabic**.

5. Arab countries. Use the geographic heading and subdivision **Arab countries** for works that treat collectively the Arabic-speaking countries of Asia and Africa, or of Asia only. Also use the term to qualify headings that designate these countries collectively, for example, **Arab countries periodicals; Diplomatic and consular service, Arab countries**.

5. Building details.

a. Named building details. If a building detail, such as a window, door, portal, dome, or room, has a proper name, establish a specific subject heading for it. If the building of which it is a part has been established as a subject heading or as a name heading with a geographic qualifier, establish the building detail according to the following model:

```
1XX ## $a [name of detail] ([name of structure], [geographic
qualifier])
4XX ## $a [alternate name(s)] ([name of structure],
[geographic qualifier])
5XX X# $ g $a [heading for the main structure]
550 ## $ g $a [type of detail] $z [country]
```

If the main building has been established as a name heading that has no geographic qualifier, use the following model:

```
1XX ## $a [name of detail] ([name of structure])
4XX ## $a [alternate name(s)] ([name of structure])
5XX X# $w g $a [heading for the main structure]
550 ## $w g $a [type of detail] $z [country]
```

b. Unnamed building details. If a building detail does not have a proper name, do not establish a separate heading for it. Instead, assign two headings to bring out the detail:

```
650 #0 $a [generic heading for the type of building detail]
$z [place]
610 20 $a [heading for the main structure]
```

6. Parts of complex structures. Also establish the name of a component part of a complex structure directly under its own name, following the pattern in sec. 5, above, for example, pagoda forming part of a temple complex.

H 1334 Buildings and Other Structures

7. Assignment of headings. Assign the appropriate combination of the following types of headings to a work about an individual structure:

6XX X0 \$a [*name of structure*].

651 #0 \$a [*name of city*] \$x Buildings, structures, etc.

Assign this heading if the structure or building is located in a city and the work being cataloged discusses it from the architectural standpoint, that is, if it describes the structure or building as a physical entity.

6X0 X0 \$a [*name of architect or architectural firm*].

Assign this heading if the work discusses the structure from the architectural point of view, and if the name of the architect or firm is readily available.

6X0 X0 \$a [*name of owner, resident, etc.*] \$x Homes and haunts
\$z [*place*].

Assign if the work discusses the person, family, or performing group who owns or resides in the structure.

600 X0 \$a [*name of person memorialized*] \$x Monuments \$z [*place*].

Assign this heading if the structure is a memorial or monument erected in honor of a particular person, and the name of the person is readily available.

6XX X0 \$a [*any special feature or topic appropriate to the work being cataloged*].

The name of the structure in the first heading above refers either to a corporate name heading established by descriptive catalogers and used by subject catalogers to designate a named structure, for example, churches, museums, etc., or to a heading for an individual structure established by subject catalogers in accordance with the provisions of the earlier portion of this instruction sheet.

The order of headings assigned to a particular work depends on the emphasis of the work, and may not correspond to the order given above.

Buildings and Other Structures H 1334

8. Examples.

151 ## \$a Brooklyn Bridge (New York, N.Y.)
550 ## \$w g \$a Bridges \$z New York (State)

151 ## \$a Pont-Neuf (Paris, France)
550 ## \$w g \$a Bridges \$z France

151 ## \$a Westminster Bridge (London, England)
550 ## \$w g \$a Bridges \$z England

110 2# \$a Castillo de Ponferrada (Ponferrada, Spain)
410 2# \$a Ponferrada Castle (Ponferrada, Spain)
550 ## \$w g \$a Castles \$z Spain

110 2# \$a Schloss Halbturm (Halbturm, Austria)
410 2# \$a Halbturm Castle (Halbturm, Austria)
550 ## \$w g \$a Castles \$z Austria

110 2# \$a Château de Versailles (Versailles, France)
410 2# \$a Versailles Palace (Versailles, France)
550 ## \$w g \$a Palaces \$z France

151 ## \$a Yihe Yuan (Beijing, China)
451 ## \$w nne \$a I Ho Yüan (Beijing, China)
451 ## \$w nne \$a I Ho Yüan (Peking, China)
451 ## \$a Summer Palace (Beijing, China)
451 ## \$a Yi He Yuan (Beijing, China)
550 ## \$w g \$a Parks \$z China

110 2# \$a Herbert Hoover Memorial Building (Stanford, Calif.)
410 2# \$a Herbert Hoover Memorial Education Building
(Stanford, Calif.)
410 2# \$a Hoover Memorial Building (Stanford, Calif.)
550 ## \$w g \$a College buildings \$z California

H 1334 Buildings and Other Structures

8. Examples. (Continued)

110 2# \$a 2040 Union Street (San Francisco, Calif.)
550 ## \$w g \$a Dwellings \$z California

110 2# \$a Maison Fornel (Québec, Québec)
410 2# \$a Fornel House (Québec, Québec)
410 2# \$a Maison Villeray (Québec, Québec)
410 2# \$a Villeray House (Québec, Québec)
550 ## \$w g \$a Dwellings \$z Québec (Province)

110 2# \$a Mount Clare (Baltimore, Md. : Building)
550 ## \$w g \$a Dwellings \$z Maryland

110 2# \$a Library of Congress James Madison Memorial Building
(Washington, D.C.)
410 2# \$a James Madison Memorial Building (Washington,
D.C.)
410 2# \$a Library of Congress Madison Building
(Washington, D.C.)
410 2# \$a Madison Building, Library of Congress
(Washington, D.C.)
550 ## \$w g \$a Library buildings \$z Washington (D.C.)

110 2# \$a White House (Washington, D.C.)
550 ## \$a Official residences \$z Washington (D.C.)
550 ## \$w g \$a Presidents \$x Dwellings \$z Washington (D.C.)

110 2# \$a Indian Point Nuclear Power Plant (N.Y.)
550 ## \$w g \$a Nuclear power plants \$z New York (State)

110 2# \$a Hauptbahnhof (Hamburg, Germany)
550 ## \$w g \$a Railroad stations \$z Germany

110 2# \$a Cleveland Municipal Stadium (Cleveland, Ohio)
410 2# \$a Municipal Stadium (Cleveland, Ohio)
550 ## \$w g \$a Stadiums \$z Ohio

110 2# \$a Presbytère (New Orleans, La.)
550 ## \$w g \$a Buildings \$z Louisiana

Buildings and Other Structures H 1334

8. Examples. (Continued)

110 2# \$a Hadrian's Villa (Tivoli, Italy)
410 2# \$a Adriana Villa (Tivoli, Italy)
410 2# \$a Villa Adriana (Tivoli, Italy)
551 ## \$w g \$a Italy \$x Antiquities
550 ## \$w g \$a Palaces \$z Italy

110 2# \$a Saitō (Yakushiji, Nara-shi, Japan)
410 2# \$a West Pagoda (Yakushiji, Nara-shi, Japan)
550 ## \$w g \$a Pagodas \$z Japan
510 2# \$w g \$a Yakushiji (Nara-shi, Japan)

150 ## \$a Hyman Liberman Memorial Door (South African National
Gallery)
450 ## \$a Liberman Memorial Door (South African National
Gallery)
550 ## \$w g \$a Doors \$z South Africa
510 2# \$w g \$a South African National Gallery

151 ## \$a Plaza de Bolívar (Panama, Panama)
451 ## \$a Bolívar Plaza (Panama, Panama)
550 ## \$w g \$a Plazas \$z Panama

150 ## \$a Western Wall (Jerusalem)
450 ## \$a Wailing Wall (Jerusalem)
550 ## \$w g \$a Walls \$z Jerusalem

Cooking and Cookbooks H 1475

BACKGROUND: Prior to 2010, the Library of Congress used the heading **Cookery** both as a topical heading for general works about cooking and as a form heading for general collections of cooking recipes. In 2010, the topical heading was changed to **Cooking**, and a separate genre/form heading **Cookbooks** was established. The word **Cookery** was also changed to **Cooking** in other existing headings such as **Cooking, French**; **Cooking (Blueberries)**; **Cooking for the sick**; etc. The topical heading **Recipes** was changed to **Formulas, recipes, etc.** to clarify its usage for preparation of non-food items. This instruction sheet provides guidelines for assigning subject headings to cookbooks and works about cooking.

1. Cooking. Assign the heading **Cooking** (May Subd Geog) to general works on cooking, cuisine, and food preparation. Use this heading for works about all types of food preparation, including preparation of those foods that do not necessarily need to be heated. When appropriate, subdivide the heading by place to express the location of the cooking. *Example:*

Title: Austin entertains.

650 #0 \$a Cooking \$z Texas \$z Austin.

2. Cookbooks.

a. Genre/form heading. Assign **Cookbooks** as a genre/form heading to collections of cooking recipes. Assign the heading both to general collections of cooking recipes and to collections focused on specific ingredients, special diets, etc. Do not subdivide this genre/form heading by place. Assign additional topical headings to bring out the location if appropriate. *Example:*

Title: Monday to Friday cookbook.

650 #0 \$a Cooking \$z United States.

655 #0 \$a Cookbooks.

*Note: Do not assign the heading **Formulas, recipes, etc.** to collections of cooking recipes. Use that heading only for more general recipe books of household items, cleaning compounds, cosmetics, etc. Example:*

Title: The Natural formula book for home & yard.

650 #0 \$a Formulas, recipes, etc.

H 1475 Cooking and Cookbooks

2. *Cookbooks.* (Continued)

b. Topical heading. Assign **Cookbooks** as a topical heading to works about cookbooks. Divide the heading by place if appropriate. Example:

Title: Pot roast, politics, and ants in the pantry : Missouri's cookbook heritage.

650 #0 \$a Cookbooks \$z Missouri \$x History.

3. National and ethnic cuisines and styles of cooking. Assign the heading **Cooking** qualified by nationality or ethnic group to works on the specific style of cooking associated with that nationality or ethnic group, for example, **Cooking, French**; **Cooking, Kurdish**; **Mexican American cooking**. Further subdivide headings for nationality to express regional styles, for example, **Cooking, American-Louisiana style**. Do not use geographic subdivision after headings for national or ethnic styles of cooking. For works on a style of cooking in a specific place, assign a subject heading for the style and an additional subject heading **Cooking** divided by place. *Example:*

Title: A taste of bountiful Ohio.

650 #0 \$a Cooking, American \$x Midwestern style.

650 #0 \$a Cooking \$z Ohio.

4. Specific ingredients or foods. Assign the heading **Cooking** with an appropriate parenthetical qualifier to works on the preparation of dishes using a specific ingredient or food, for example, **Cooking (Blueberries)**; **Cooking (Eggs)**; **Cooking (Garlic)**. For works on the preparation of specific food products assign a heading for the product, for example, **Bread**; **Omelets**; **Salads**.

*Note: In some cases two headings exist, one for the food product itself, for example, **Jelly** (for works on making jellies) and another for that product as an ingredient in cooking, for example, **Cooking (Jelly)** (for works on using jelly as an ingredient in other foods).*

Examples:

Title: The banana lover's cookbook.

650 #0 \$a Cooking (Bananas)

655 #0 \$a Cookbooks

4. Specific ingredients or foods.

Examples: (Continued)

Title: The salmon cookbook.

650 #0 \$a Cooking (Salmon)

655 #0 \$a Cookbooks.

Title: Basic breads around the world.

650 #0 \$a Bread.

650 #0 \$a International cooking.

Title: Cooking with bread.

650 #0 \$a Cooking (Bread)

655 #0 \$a Cookbooks.

5. Recipes for special types of diets. Assign the heading **Cooking for the sick** to general works on preparing food for patients or persons with diseases. Assign an additional heading for **Cookbooks** if the work is a general collection of recipes. Assign the free-floating subdivision **–Diet therapy–Recipes** under names of individual diseases or under the subdivision **–Diseases**, for collections of recipes intended for persons with those diseases. For collections of recipes for special types of diets, such as those free from certain substances or higher or lower in certain substances, assign a heading for the diet with subdivision **–Recipes**, for example, **Milk-free diet–Recipes**; **High-potassium diet–Recipes**. The subdivision **–Recipes** is not free-floating for this usage. *Examples:*

Title: Cooking well for the unwell : more than 100 nutritious recipes.

650 #0 \$a Cooking for the sick.

655 #0 \$a Cookbooks.

Title: The anti-coronary cookbook.

650 #0 \$a Heart \$x Diseases \$x Diet therapy \$v Recipes.

650 #0 \$a Low-cholesterol diet \$v Recipes.

655 #0 \$a Cookbooks.

Title: Down home cookin' : without the down home fat.

650 #0 \$a Low-fat diet \$v Recipes.

655 #0 \$a Cookbooks.

H 1475 Cooking and Cookbooks

6. Recipes associated with specific institutions or organizations. For collections of recipes used by individual restaurants, families, members of individual organizations, or otherwise related to an individual corporate body, assign the subject headings appropriate to the content of the work. For recipes from an individual restaurant, assign an additional subject heading for the restaurant. For recipe books from individual families, societies, clubs, etc., assign an additional subject heading for the individual family or corporate body only if the work contains substantial information about the family or body. *Examples:*

Title: Southern cooking from Mary Mac's Tea Room.

650 #0 \$a Cooking, American \$x Southern style.
650 #0 \$a Cooking \$z Georgia \$z Atlanta.
610 20 \$a Mary Mac's Tea Room.
655 #0 \$a Cookbooks.

Title: Louisiana entertains : menus and recipes from the Rapides Symphony Guild, Alexandria, Louisiana.

650 #0 \$a Cooking, American \$x Louisiana style.
650 #0 \$a Menus.
655 #0 \$a Cookbooks.

*Title: The Oke family cookbook : favorite recipes of Janette's family.
[includes historical information about the family]*

650 #0 \$a Cooking, American \$x Louisiana style.
600 30 \$a Oke family.
655 #0 \$a Cookbooks.

7. Other special aspects of cooking. Assign, as appropriate, specific subject headings expressing method of preparation, type of meal, or category of food. Assign subject headings in the following order: 1) ingredient or food; 2) method of preparation; 3) meal or category of food; 4) national or ethnic style; 5) genre/form. *Examples:*

Title: Glorious vegetables in the microwave.

650 #0 \$a Cooking (Vegetables)
650 #0 \$a Microwave cooking.

Title: Indian sweet cookery.

650 #0 \$a Desserts \$z India.
650 #0 \$a Cooking, Indic.

7. Other special aspects of cooking.

Examples: (Continued)

Title: The Southern heritage breakfast and brunch cookbook.

650 #0 \$a Breakfasts.

650 #0 \$a Brunches.

650 #0 \$a Cooking, American \$x Southern style.

655 #0 \$a Cookbooks.

Title: Maida Heatter's Book of great chocolate desserts.

650 #0 \$a Cooking (Chocolate)

650 #0 \$a Desserts.

655 #0 \$a Cookbooks.

Title: The breads of France and how to bake them in your own kitchen.

650 #0 \$a Bread \$z France.

650 #0 \$a Cooking, French.

655 #0 \$a Cookbooks.

Title: The Old West baking book.

650 #0 \$a Baking.

650 #0 \$a Cooking, American \$x Western style.

655 #0 \$a Cookbooks.

Title: Microwaving light meals & snacks.

650 #0 \$a Microwave cooking.

650 #0 \$a Appetizers.

655 #0 \$a Cookbooks.

8. Establishing headings for individual cooking ingredients. Establish new headings for cooking ingredients according to the following pattern:

150 #0 \$a Cooking ([name of ingredient])

450 #0 \$a Cooking with [product or commodity]

450 #0 \$a [product or commodity] \$x Use in cooking

550 #0 \$w g \$a Cooking ([broader category])

Examples:

150 #0 \$a Cooking (Tropical fruit)

450 #0 \$a Cooking with tropical fruit

450 #0 \$a Tropical fruit \$x Use in cooking

550 #0 \$w g \$a Cooking (Fruit)

H 1475 Cooking and Cookbooks

8. Establishing headings for individual cooking ingredients.

Examples: (Continued)

```
150 #0 $a Cooking (Cream cheese)
450 #0 $a Cooking with cream cheese
450 #0 $a Cream cheese $x Use in cooking
550 #0 $w g $a Cooking (Cheese)
```

2. *Individual directories.*

e. Individual Christian denominations. (Continued)

(2) **Membership directories.** Assign a heading of the type [*class of persons*]-**Directories** for directories containing only the names and addresses of members of, or persons identifying themselves with, a particular denomination. *Example:*

Title: Directory of Lutherans residing in Decorah, Iowa.
 650 #0 \$a Lutherans \$z Iowa \$z Decorah
 \$v Directories.
 651 #0 \$a Decorah (Iowa) \$v Directories.

(3) For directories containing both membership and organizational information, assign both types of headings.

f. Topical headings.

(1) **Disciplines.** Use the free-floating subdivision **-Directories** under disciplines for directories that list various types of persons and organizations associated with the field. *Example:*

650 #0 \$a Engineering \$z Pennsylvania \$v Directories.

Exception: If a directory lists only the names, addresses, etc., of a particular class of persons working in a field, assign instead a heading of the type [*class of persons*]-**Directories**. *Example:*

650 #0 \$a Engineers \$z Pennsylvania
 \$v Directories.

(2) **Industries and activities.** Use the free-floating subdivision **-Directories** under headings for types of industries, etc.

Do not use the subdivision **-Directories** under names of objects or products if a heading exists for the industry or activity that produces the product. *Example:*

650 #0 \$a Rubber industry and trade \$v Directories.
 [not 650 #0 \$a Rubber \$v Directories.]

H 1558 Directories

2. *Individual directories.*

f. Topical headings. (Continued)

(3) *Newspapers and periodicals.* Use the subdivision **–Directories** under topical headings for newspapers or periodicals for lists of newspapers or periodicals with identifying information such as the name and address of the publisher, subscription costs, size of circulation, scope of publication, etc.

Examples:

Title: Ulrich's international periodicals directory.
650 #0 \$a Periodicals \$v Directories.

Title: National directory of weekly newspapers.
650 #0 \$a American newspapers \$v Directories.

Do not use this subdivision for works that are bibliographies or catalogs of newspapers.

(4) *Other topics.* Use the subdivision **–Directories** under other topics, if appropriate.

3. *Telephone directories.* Use the subdivision **–Telephone directories** under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, classes of persons, ethnic groups, and types of industries and organizations, for telephone directories of those places, organizations, or groups.

Examples:

651 #0 \$a Cairo (Egypt) \$v Telephone directories.
610 20 \$a Library of Congress \$v Telephone directories.
650 #0 \$a Financial planners \$z Maryland \$v Telephone directories.
650 #0 \$a East Indians \$z Ontario \$z Toronto \$v Telephone directories.
650 #0 \$a Information services \$z United States \$v Telephone directories.

4. *Directories issued as serials.* In accordance with H 1927, do not subdivide **–Directories** further by **–Periodicals**, even if the directory is issued as a serial.

5. *MARC 21 coding.* For instructions on MARC 21 coding for directories, see the *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data*.

BACKGROUND: The free-floating subdivision **-Interviews** is used as both a form and a topical subdivision under headings for classes of persons, ethnic groups, names of individual corporate bodies, and names of individual persons, including literary authors, for transcripts of what was said during the course of interviews or conversations with one or more persons on one or more occasions, and for works about those interviews. This instruction sheet provides guidelines for the use of this subdivision, as well as for the use of the heading **Interviews**.

1. The heading Interviews. Assign the heading **Interviews** (*May Subd Geog*) to general collections of interviews with persons from a wide variety of groups or with undesignated backgrounds. *Example:*

Title: Talks with prominent Americans.
650 #0 \$a Interviews \$z United States.

2. -Interviews as a form subdivision.

a. Classes of persons or ethnic groups. Assign a heading or headings of the type [*class of persons*]-**Interviews** or [*ethnic group*]-**Interviews** to works consisting of interviews with one or more persons from specific fields or ethnic groups. *Examples:*

650 #0 \$a African Americans \$v Interviews.
650 #0 \$a Children of divorced parents \$z United States
\$v Interviews.
650 #0 \$a Scientists \$z Hungary \$v Interviews.
650 #0 \$a Terminally ill \$z Sweden \$v Interviews.
610 10 \$a United States. \$b Navy \$x Surgeons \$v Interviews.
650 #0 \$a Women mountaineers \$z Europe \$v Interviews.

Exception: If the heading representing the special class of persons does not exist and it is not possible to establish such a heading, use **-Interviews** under the heading for the appropriate field or discipline. In such situations the subdivision is not free-floating and must be established. An example of a work requiring such treatment would be a collection of interviews with several persons involved in the field of dance, including dancers, choreographers, impresarios, composers, costume designers, patrons, etc.

Also use the subdivision **-Interviews** under names of individual corporate bodies, including performing groups, for collections of interviews with persons associated with the corporate body, for example, **Minnesota Vikings (Football team)-Interviews**; **Guarneri Quartet-Interviews**. Use more specific subdivisions representing classes of persons, for example, **-Employees** or **-Presidents**, under the corporate body heading, if appropriate.

H 1678 Interviews

2. *-Interviews as a form subdivision.* (Continued)

b. Individual persons. Use the free-floating subdivision **-Interviews** under names of individual persons, including literary authors, for works consisting of interviews with them. *Examples:*

Title: Entretiens avec Marcel Duchamp.

600 10 \$a Duchamp, Marcel, \$d 1887-1968 \$v Interviews.
650 #0 \$a Artists \$z France \$v Interviews.

Title: Borges at eighty : conversations.

600 10 \$a Borges, Jorge Luis, \$d 1899-1986 \$v Interviews.
650 #0 \$a Authors, Argentine \$y 20th century \$v Interviews.

3. *--Interviews as a topical subdivision.* Use **--Interviews** as a topical subdivision under headings for classes of persons, ethnic groups, names of individual corporate bodies, and names of individual persons, including literary authors, for works about interviews or conversations with one or more persons on one or more occasions. *Example:*

Title: Frost/Nixon.

600 10 \$a Nixon, Richard M. \$q (Richard Milhous), \$d 1913-
1994 \$x Interviews.
650 #0 \$a Presidents \$z United States \$x Interviews.
650 #0 \$a Ex-presidents \$z United States \$x Interviews.
600 10 \$a Frost, David, \$d 1939 Apr. 7-

Title: Enron 1986-2001

610 20 \$a Enron Corp. \$x Employees \$x Interviews.
650 #0 \$a Energy industries \$z United States.

4. *Assigning additional headings.* Assign additional appropriate headings as needed to bring out the focus of the interviews or specific topics discussed. Do not further subdivide these headings by **-Interviews**. *Examples:*

Title: Soviet leaders face American journalists.

651 #0 \$a Soviet Union \$x Foreign relations \$y 1953-1975.
651 #0 \$a Soviet Union \$x Foreign relations \$z United
States.
651 #0 \$a United States \$x Foreign relations \$z Soviet
Union.
650 #0 \$a Statesmen \$z Soviet Union \$v Interviews.

4. Assigning additional headings.

Examples: (Continued)

Title: Ici et maintenant : conversations avec...

600 10 \$a Mitterrand, François, \$d 1916-1996 \$v Interviews.

650 #0 \$a Statesmen \$z France \$v Interviews.

651 #0 \$a France \$x Politics and government \$y 1974-1981.

BACKGROUND: *This instruction sheet presents guidelines on the assignment of Library of Congress subject headings to juvenile materials. These instructions do not apply to the assignment of Children's Subject Headings (formerly called AC headings) by children's literature catalogers. For guidelines on the assignment of classification numbers, see F 615.*

DETERMINING WHETHER A WORK IS JUVENILE: *Treat topical materials intended primarily for children and young people through the age of 15, or the 9th grade, as juvenile. Treat fiction intended primarily for children and young people through high school age as juvenile.*

If explicit information on age level ("pre-school through age-15," "ages 12 and up," etc.) has been provided by the publisher on the dust jacket, cover, front matter, CIP data sheet, etc., use this as the basis for determining that the work is intended to be juvenile. If the age level is not explicitly stated, determine the intent by a careful examination of the preface, text, series statement, etc. In more difficult cases, use such indications as format, publisher, treatment of previous works in the same series, etc., as clues to the intended audience of the work.

1. Topical juvenile materials. Assign LC subject headings and subdivisions to topical materials for juveniles up through age 15 or 9th grade. Use the form subdivisions **-Juvenile literature**, **-Juvenile films**, **-Juvenile sound recordings**, and **-Juvenile software** as the final element in all subject headings assigned to topical juvenile materials unless special form headings or subdivisions have been established, for example, **Children's encyclopedias and dictionaries**; **-Dictionaries, Juvenile**; **-Encyclopedias, Juvenile**; **-Juvenile humor**. With rare exceptions, if a work is assigned any juvenile heading, all headings assigned must reflect the juvenile nature of the work.

Note: The above paragraph does not apply to belles lettres. For provisions applicable to juvenile belles lettres, see sec. 3, below.

H 1690 Juvenile Materials

2. Textbooks. Assign the heading [*topic*]-**Textbooks** to textbooks for children up through age 15 or 9th grade. Do not further subdivide **-Textbooks** by **-Juvenile literature** and do not assign duplicate headings divided by **-Juvenile literature**.

Exception: For religious education textbooks, use the subdivision **-Textbooks for children**. For foreign language textbooks, use either **-Textbooks**, **-Textbooks for English, [French, etc.] speakers**, or **-Textbooks for foreign speakers**, as appropriate. Do not further subdivide by **-Juvenile literature**. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Jewish religious education $v Textbooks for
      children.
650 #0 $a Christian education $v Textbooks for children
      $x Lutheran.
650 #0 $a English language $v Textbooks for foreign
      speakers.
```

3. Juvenile belles lettres. Assign juvenile form headings and subdivisions to belles lettres for children, for example, **Children's stories**; **Nursery rhymes**; **-Juvenile drama**; **-Juvenile fiction**; **-Juvenile poetry**. Where juvenile form headings do not exist and are not deemed appropriate to establish, assign adult headings, for example, **Ghost stories**; **Detective and mystery stories**. Do not further subdivide these adult form headings by the juvenile form subdivisions **-Juvenile drama**, **-Juvenile fiction**, or **-Juvenile poetry**.

Do not assign juvenile form headings to belles lettres for young adults.

Do not use the subdivision **-Juvenile literature** under form headings for juvenile belles lettres. The exceptions to this practice that occurred in the past, for example, **Limericks-Juvenile literature**; **Riddles-Juvenile literature**, have been removed from the subject authority file and should not be used or reestablished.

Do not treat folklore materials as belles lettres. Do not use juvenile form subdivisions under headings for particular genres, such as **Tales**; **Fairy tales**; **Folk literature**; **etc.**, nor under the subdivision **-Folklore**.

4. Polyglot books. Establish and assign to both individual works and to collections of juvenile fiction, drama, and poetry presented in three or more languages headings of the type **Children's stories**, **Polyglot**; **Children's plays**, **Polyglot**; **Children's poetry**, **Polyglot**.

5. *Juvenile software.* Assign headings of the type *[topic]*–**Juvenile software** for materials coded **a**, **b**, or **c** in field 008/22. Also assign headings of this type for materials coded **f** (Specialized) if there is evidence that the material is juvenile in nature
6. *Bibliographies of juvenile materials on specific topics.* Assign headings of the type *[topic]*– **Juvenile literature–Bibliography**. For lists of juvenile audiovisual materials, assign headings of the type *[topic]*–**Juvenile films–Catalogs** or *[topic]*–**Juvenile sound recordings–Discography**.

3. *Special cataloging situations.*

a. *Text without important features.* (Continued)

(3) *Commentaries.* If the work is a commentary on either the original manuscript or on a facsimile edition, with or without the text, assign the following headings:

[*topic*] (–Early works to 1800)
 Manuscripts, [*language*]–[*place*]–Facsimiles
 [*name of work, i.e. author/title or uniform title heading*]
 [*name of manuscript; or repository designation*]
 [*institution where housed; and/or private collection; owner*]

Examples:

Valturio, Roberto, 15th cent.

De re militari. [Italy, 3d quarter of 15th cent.]

[Rosenwald Coll. Ms. no. 14]

Manuscript on paper. Humanistic script.

650 #0 \$a Military art and science \$v Early works to 1800.

650 #0 \$a Manuscripts, Latin (Medieval and modern) \$z Washington (D.C.)

Pepys Library. Manuscript. Pepys 1047.

Stereotypically: a book of medieval refinements, recipes and remedies, from a manuscript in Samuel Pepys's library. Introduction by Delia Smith. Facsimile ...

650 #0 \$a Cooking, English \$v Early works to 1800.

650 #0 \$a Medicine, Medieval.

650 #0 \$a Manuscripts, English \$z England \$z Cambridge \$v Facsimiles.

610 10 \$a Pepys Library. \$k Manuscript. \$n Pepys 1047.

600 10 \$a Pepys, Samuel, \$d 1633-1703 \$x Library.

H 1855 Manuscripts

3. *Special cataloging situations.*

a. Text without important features.

Examples: (Continued)

Alcock, N. W. (Nathaniel Warren)

Warwickshire grazier and London skinner, 1532-1555 : the account book of Peter Temple and Thomas Heritage.

Contains the complete text of Huntington Library Ms. ST 36.

```
650 #0 $a Agriculture $z England $z Warwickshire
      $x Accounting $v Early works to 1800.
650 #0 $a Wool industry $z England $z London
      $x Accounting $v Early works to 1800.
610 20 $a Henry E. Huntington Library and Art
      Gallery. $k Manuscript. $n ST 36.
600 10 $a Temple, Peter, $d ca. 1517-ca. 1588
      $x Archives.
600 10 $a Heritage, Thomas $x Archives.
```

Sächsische Landesbibliothek (Dresden, Germany).

Manuscript. C 80, fol. 368r-378v.

Die erste deutsche Algebra aus dem Jahre 1481. Erläutert von Kurt Vogel.

Consists of the Middle High German text of and notes on manuscript ...

```
650 #0 $a Arithmetic $v Early works to 1900.
610 20 $a Sächsische Landesbibliothek (Dresden,
      Germany). $k Manuscript. $n C 80, fol.
      368r-378v.
```

Domesday book / facsimiles with introduction.

6 p., ix p. of plates.

Includes bibliographical references.

```
651 #0 $a Great Britain $x History $y Norman
      period, 1066-1154.
630 00 $a Domesday book.
```

Glossary

Adjectival qualifier. A word or phrase used to modify, clarify, or limit the meaning of the noun portion of a subject heading. In a *straight heading*, the word or phrase appears before the noun in natural English-language word order; in an *inverted heading*, the word or phrase appears after the noun and is separated from the noun by a comma. An adjectival qualifier is most commonly used to modify a topic by the name of a specific language, nationality, or ethnic group, as in the headings **English poetry**; **Diplomatic and consular service, Egyptian**; **Mexican American cooking**.

Authority file. A file containing individual *authority records* for established *name headings* or *subject headings* and *subdivisions*.

Authority record. A record that contains the established form of a *name heading*, a *subject heading*, or a *subdivision*, a list of cross-references made to the heading or subdivision from alternative or related forms, and a list of sources that justify the established and alternative forms.

Biography, Collective, *see* **Collective biography**

Biography, Individual, *see* **Individual biography**

Broader term reference. A reference from one *subject heading* to another subject heading that is at a higher level in a hierarchy and is therefore a more inclusive term. Broader term references appear in 5XX fields in *subject authority records*, and are identifiable by the presence of the value **g** in the first character position of the \$w control subfield.

BT, *see* **Broader term reference**

Chronological subdivision. A subject heading *subdivision* in a \$y subfield of a 6XX field that designates a period of time, such as **-1945-1990**, **-20th century**, etc.

Collective biography. A biography of two or more individuals.

Direct subdivision, *see* **Geographic subdivision**

Form. The physical, bibliographical, artistic, or literary nature of a work.

Form heading. A type of *subject heading* that expresses what a work **is** (in contrast to what it is **about**), such as **American poetry**, **Law reports, digests, etc.**, **Large type books**, etc.

Glossary

Form subdivision. A type of subject heading *subdivision* that appears in a \$v subfield of a 6XX field and that expresses what a work **is**, such as **–Periodicals**, **–Juvenile films**, etc.

Free-floating subdivision. A subject heading *subdivision* that may be assigned under designated subjects without the usage being established editorially, that is, without a *subject authority record* for the particular *string* being created in the *subject authority file*.

General see also reference. A *narrower term reference* made not to specific individual subject headings but to a category of *subject headings* or *subdivisions*, frequently listing one or more individual headings or subdivisions by way of example. General see also references appear in 360 fields in *subject authority records*.

General see reference. A *use reference* made not to specific individual headings but to a category of *subject headings* or *subdivisions*, frequently listing one or more individual headings or subdivisions by way of example. General see references appear in 260 fields in *subject authority records*.

Geographic qualifier. The name of a larger geographic entity added in parentheses after the name of a more specific locality or other entity to designate its location, as in the subject headings **Whitney, Mount (Calif.)**; **Gobi Desert (Mongolia and China)**; **Colorado River (Colo.-Mexico)**; **Empire State Building (New York, N.Y.)**.

Geographic subdivision. A type of subject heading *subdivision* that appears in a \$z subfield of a 6XX field and that expresses the name of the place to which the *subject* or *form* of the work, designated in the main part of the heading, is limited. Geographic subdivision may be **indirect**, in which the name of a larger geographic entity is placed in a separate \$z subfield before the name of a more specific locality, or **direct**, in which a place name is assigned without the interposition of the name of a larger geographic entity.

Indirect subdivision, see Geographic subdivision

Individual biography. A biography of one person.

Inverted heading. A heading that consists of a noun modified by an adjective, formulated to place the noun in the initial position followed by a comma and the adjective. See also *Straight heading*.

LCSH, see Library of Congress Subject Headings

Appendix F: Subject-Related Codes in Field 008 - Books

BACKGROUND: Several data elements in the 008 field are directly related to the subject matter of the item being cataloged or to the type of information it contains. In MARC 21 book records, these elements are 008/22 (Target audience); 008/24-27 (Nature of contents); 008/29 (Conference publication); 008/33 (Literary form); and 008/34 (Biography). This instruction sheet provides guidelines followed by Library of Congress catalogers in coding these elements of the 008 field. It replaces D 145, an instruction sheet that was formerly in the **Subject Cataloging Manual: General Cataloging Procedures**. The terminology used in these instructions corresponds to that used in the LC ILS (Voyager), the system used by Library of Congress catalogers to create and edit book records.

1. 008/22 (Target audience). If the work is juvenile, as described in H 1690, select the code **j: Juvenile**. Otherwise, accept the default setting **_: Unknown or not specified**. Do not select any code other than **j** or **_**.

2. 008/24-27 (Nature of contents).

a. General principle. To any work that is assigned a subject heading with a form subdivision for which there is a corresponding **Nature of contents** code, select that code. Also select a code if a work contains a significant amount of the type of material represented by the code, even if it is not brought out in the subject headings assigned.

b. Number of codes. Assign as many as four codes (one each in field 008/24, 008/25, 008/26, and 008/27) to any work that contains more than one type of material. If no code is being specified for any one or more of these data elements, accept the default setting **_: No (or, no additional) specified nature of contents**.

c. Codes and definitions. A full list of the available codes, together with definitions and application guidelines, is in the *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data*, accessible via *Cataloger's Desktop* or on the Web at

<<http://www.loc.gov/marc/bibliographic/bd008b.html>>

3. 008/29 (Conference publication). If **–Congresses** is used as a form subdivision in the 6XX fields, select the code **1: Conference publication**. Otherwise, accept the default setting **0: Not a conference publication**.

Appendix F: Subject-Related Codes in Field 008 - Books

4. **008/33 (*Literary form*)**. If the work is fiction, select the code **1: Fiction (not further specified)**. Select this code only for prose fiction classed in P in the LC classification. Do not use the code for drama, poetry, folklore material classed in G, or mythology classed in B. If the work is not fiction, accept the default setting **0: Not fiction (not further specified)**. Do not select any code other than **0** or **1**.

5. **008/34 (*Biography*)**.

a. Valid biography codes The following codes are valid for field 008/34:

a = individual autobiography, including works that are both autobiographical and biographical (e.g. *My life with [a famous person]*)

b = individual biography

c = collective biography or autobiography, i.e. works that contain two or more biographies

d = contains biographical information (individual or collective)

b. Guidelines for assigning a biography code. If a work is entirely or mostly biographical, select code **a**, **b**, or **c** in field 008/34, as appropriate. If the work has biographical information that is judged to be significant, but is insufficient for coding **a**, **b**, or **c**, enter code **d**. If the work contains no biographical material, accept the default setting **_: No biographical material**. Consider the following types of material to be biographical:

- Straightforward accounts of a person's life, character, thought, and activities.
- Accounts of limited periods or aspects of a person's life, e.g. Goethe as a government official.
- Collections of documents relating to a person's life, such as birth, marriage, or death certificates, commissions, diplomas, etc.
- Obituaries, funeral orations, and eulogies, if they focus on the personal life of the deceased.

Appendix F: Subject-Related Codes in Field 008 - Books

5. 008/34 (*Biography*).

b. Guidelines for assigning a biography code. (Continued)

- Collections of materials that serve as a source of, or substitute for, an account of a life, including the following:
 - Collections of correspondence (i.e. letters from one person to another, or to others) that include biographical information about the writer, but not correspondence about a particular event or topic not related to the writer's personal life.
 - Journals and diaries.
- Memoirs or reminiscences about the writer's personal life.
- Personal narratives of wars and events and first person accounts of trips or tours.
- Interviews and conversations, if they deal with the personal life of the interviewee.
- Genealogical works, if they also include biographical information.
- Collective biographies, e.g. *International Who's Who*; *Dictionary of American Biography*; etc.

c. Guidelines for omitting a biography code. Do not enter a biography code in field 008/34 for the following types of material:

- Collections of portraits, unless they are accompanied by biographical description.
- Genealogical works that do not include biographical information.
- Literary criticism, unless the work also includes biographical information.
- Biography of animals.
- Fictionalized biography.

Appendix F: Subject-Related Codes in Field 008 - Books

5. 008/34 (*Biography*). (Continued)

d. *Special considerations.*

(1) *Biography of a ruler vs. account of his or her reign.* Treat a work as biographical only if considerable attention is devoted to the ruler's personal life. Treat the work as history if the focus is on events that occurred during his or her reign. *Examples:*

Title: America's last king : an interpretation of the madness of George III.
[Code b in field 008/34 for individual biography]

Title: Memoirs of the reign of George III to the commencement of the year 1799.
[Do not code for biography]

(2) *Persons associated with doctrines or movements.* Do not treat a work as biographical if the focus is mainly on the intellectual content of the doctrine or movement rather than on the personal life of the proponent. *Example:*

Title: The history and character of Calvinism.
[Do not code for biography]

Appendix G: Subject-Related Codes in Field 008 - Continuing Resources (Serials)

BACKGROUND: Several data elements in the 008 field are directly related to the subject matter of the item being cataloged or to the type of information it contains. In MARC 21 continuing resource (serial) records, these elements are 008/24 (Nature of entire work); 008/25-27 (Nature of contents); and 008/29 (Conference publication). This instruction sheet provides guidelines followed by Library of Congress catalogers in coding these elements of the 008 field. It replaces D 145, an instruction sheet that was formerly in the **Subject Cataloging Manual: General Cataloging Procedures**. The terminology used in these instructions corresponds to that used in OCLC Connexion, the system used by Library of Congress catalogers to create and edit continuing resource (serial) records.

1. 008/24 (Nature of entire work).

Note: This data element is labeled **EntW** in OCLC Connexion..

a. General principle. To any work that consists entirely of a type of material for which a corresponding code has been designated, enter that code in **EntW**. Only one code may be used in **EntW**.

b. Codes and definitions. A full list of the available codes, together with definitions and application guidelines, is available by clicking on **EntW** in OCLC Connexion.

2. 008/25-27 (Nature of contents).

Note: This data element is labeled **Cont** in OCLC Connexion.

a. General principle. To any work that contains a significant amount of a type of material for which a corresponding code is available, enter that code in **Cont**. As many as three codes may be use in **Cont**, in alphabetical order.

b. Codes and definitions. A full list of the available codes, together with definitions and application guidelines, is available by clicking on **Cont** in OCLC Connexion.

Appendix G: Subject-Related Codes in Field 008 - Continuing Resources (Serials)

3. *Coding for biography.* Unlike the books format, which uses field 008/34 and provides several codes for different types of biographical material, the continuing resources format uses fields 008/24 or 008/25-27 and provides only the single code **h** to designate any type of biographical material. Use **h** for autobiography, individual biography, or collective biography. Use the code in field 008/24 if the item consists entirely of biographical material, or in field 008/25-27 if the item contains biographical material as well as other types of material.

Note: For guidelines on what type of material is considered biographical and what type is not, see Appendix F, sec. 5.b and 5.c.

4. 008/29 (Conference publication).

Note: This data element is labeled **Conf** in OCLC Connexion..

If **-Congresses** is used as a form subdivision in the 6XX fields, enter the code **1** in **Conf**. Otherwise, use the code **0**.

INDEX

Page numbers are in parentheses following the number of the instruction sheet. Subject headings and subdivisions are displayed in bold type. Where multiple references are provided under a topic, the primary reference, if any, is displayed in bold type. References to lists of free-floating subdivisions in H 1095 - H 1200 are not included.

008 field for subject-related codes

Books: Appendix F

Continuing resources (Serials): Appendix G

043 field for geographic area codes

SEE Geographic area codes

653 field for uncontrolled subject terms: H 160

781 field for geographic subdivision form: H 200 (8), H 830 (2), H 835, H 836

- A -

AACR2 name headings: H 405 (3-4), H 430 (1-2)

Extinct cities: H 715 (1)

Abbeys

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Abbreviations

Capitalization of: Appendix B (5)

Geographic qualifiers: H 810 (3, 8-11)

Geographic subject headings: H 690 (6)

Spaces within: Appendix D (1-2)

Used as subject headings: Appendix A, H 373 (3)

Ability: H 2186 (1-2)

Ability testing as a subdivision: H 2186 (2)

Abstracting and indexing as a subdivision: H 1205 (2), H 1670 (3)

Abstracts: H 1205

Distinguished from annotated bibliographies: H 1205 (2)

Abstracts as a subdivision: H 1205

Not used under **-Congresses:** H 1460

Academies

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Accidents

Formulating headings for specific accidents: H 1592

Accompaniment

Instrumental music headings: H 250 (8), H 1917.5 (3, 10, 11, 15, 18-22)

Vocal music headings: H 250 (6, 8), H 1917.5 (5, 11, 13, 15, 18-22, 36-37)

Accounting as a subdivision: H 1624 (2)

Acquisition of government publications: H 1643

Acronyms

Establishing as subject headings: Appendix A (2)

UF references: H 373 (2)

Plurals: Appendix A (3)

Usage of the subject heading **Acronyms:** H 1206.5

Acronyms as a subdivision: H 1206.5

Activity programs: H 2110 (4)

Acts, Legislative: H 1715

Adaptations, Film: H 2230 (3)

Added entries, Partial title

SEE Partial title added entries

Addenda: H 2145

Addresses, essays, lectures as a subdivision

Discontinued: H 1210

Addresses, Street

Buildings established as street addresses: H 1334 (7)

Aerial photography: H 1210.5

Aerial views as a subdivision: H 1210.5 (2)

Affairs, Political

Formulating headings: H 1592

Airplanes, Named

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Airports

Assigning headings for names of individual airports: H 1211

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Aliens

Definition and use: H 1581 (1, 4)

Almshouses

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Amateurs' manuals as a subdivision: H 1943.5 (2)

Amendments, Constitutional: H 1465 (4-5)

America-Discovery and exploration: H 1564 (2)

[. . .] **Americans**

United States not used as geographic subdivision under: H 1919.5 (3)

Ampersands: Appendix C (4), Appendix A (2-3)

Amusement parks

SEE ALSO Parks

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Analog computer simulation: H 2040 (4)

Ancient and classical works: H 1412

Ancient cities (pre-1500)

SEE Extinct cities (pre-1500)

Ancient jurisdictions (other than cities)

As geographic subdivisions: H 830 (3, 6)

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Ancient peoples

Assigning headings: H 1225 (2)

Civilizations: H 1370 (2)

and

In music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (26-27)

[. . .] **and** [. . .] headings: H 310

Broader terms: H 370 (7)

Religion headings: H 1998 (5-6)

[. . .] **and state**

SEE **Government policy** as a subdivision

Anecdotes as a subdivision

Pets: H 1720 (2)

Animals

SEE ALSO Domestic animals

[. . .] as [. . .] headings: H 360

Assigning classification numbers: H 1332 (5)

Assigning headings for fictional works: H 1790 (3)

Headings previously unprinted in *Library of Congress Subject Headings*: H 1332 (5)

Geographic subdivision allowed at any taxonomic level: H 1332 (5)

-Legends and stories not used: H 1627 (4), H 1720 (1)

Pattern heading: H 1147

Subdivisions for legends and stories: H 1720

Subject heading proposals: H 1332 (1-5)

Individual animals with proper names: H 1332 (6-7)

Annotated bibliographies

Distinguished from collections of abstracts: H 1205 (2)

Antarctica

As geographic qualifier: H 810 (1)

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (7)

Antiquities as a subdivision: H 1225

Not used under extinct cities: H 715 (3)

Apartment houses
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Apologetic works as a subdivision: H 1472 (1)

Appendices: H 2145

Appropriations and expenditures as a subdivision: H 1624 (1)

Aquariums, Public
 Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Aqueducts
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Arab as a qualifier: H 1223

Arab countries: H 1223

Arabian as qualifier: H 1223

Arabic as a qualifier: H 1223

Arabic subject headings: H 181

Arboretums
 Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Archaeological collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Archaeological periods and cultures: H 1225 (2)

Archaeological sites
 Assigning subject headings: H 1225 (1)
 Contrasted with extinct cities: H 715 (3)
 Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)
 Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)
 Subject heading proposals: H 1225 (3-4)

Archaeological works
 Assigning subject headings: H 1225
 Specific named peoples: H 1225 (2)

Arches
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Archival resources as a subdivision: H 1230 (2-3)

Archives as a subdivision: H 1230
 Manuscript catalogs: H 1361 (5)

Area studies: H 2110 (2)

Arenas
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Aristocratic families
 Subject heading proposals: H 1574 (3-4)

Armed forces
 Pattern heading: H 1159
 Regimental histories: H 1995

Armenia (Republic): H 1023 (2-4)

Armories

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Arranged as a qualifier of music form/genre headings: H 250 (5), H 1160 (1-2), H 1917.5 (15-16)

Arsenals

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Art

Historical periods: H 1250 (4-5)

Pattern heading: H 1148

Qualifiers for art headings: H 306 (3), H 1250 (2-6)

Single works of art: H 1250 (12)

Style: H 1250 (5,10)

Works of art by a single artist: H 1250 (10-11)

Works of art by more than one artist: H 1250 (2-10)

Art, Chinese

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1148

Art, Italian

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1148

Art, Japanese

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1148

Art, Korean

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1148

Art collections: H 1250 (6)

Art collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Manuscript collections: H 1855 (8)

Art movements: H 1250 (5)

Art objects

Catalogs: H 1360 (1)

Art works, Individual

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Arthurian romances: H 1795 (2)

Articles in the initial position in subject headings

Geographic names: H 690 (6)

Titles of publications used as subject headings: H 290

Topical headings: H 290

Artificial languages

-Textbooks for English, [French, etc.] speakers: H 2187 (3)

Artificial satellites

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Artillery as a subdivision: H 1159 (2)

Artistic photography: H 1255

Artistic style qualifiers for subject headings: H 306 (3)

Artists

SEE ALSO Manuscript illuminators

Qualifying art headings to show nationality, ethnic, or religious affiliation of artists:

H 1250 (2)

Artists' groups

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Arts, The

SEE ALSO Art

Literatures

Performing arts

Definition: H 1250 (1)

Usage of the heading **Arts**: H 1250 (2)

[. . .] as [. . .] headings: H 360

Broader terms: H 370 (6)

Asian conglomerate corporations

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Assassinations

Formulating headings: H 1592

Dates in subdivisions: H 1078

Assignment of subject headings

SEE Subject heading assignment

Asteroids

Established as subject headings: H 405 (10)

Astronomical features

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Asylums (Charitable institutions)

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Athletic contests

SEE ALSO Sports events

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Atlases: H 1865

Atlases, Scientific and technical: H 1935 (3)

Attitudes as a subdivision: H 1955 (2)

Audio cassettes, Catalogs of

SEE Juvenile films

Juvenile sound recordings

Audio-visual aids as a subdivision: H 1361 (2, 6)

-Study and teaching-Audio-visual aids: H 2110 (4)

Audiotape catalogs as a subdivision: H 1361 (3)

Audiovisual materials: H 2230

Catalogs: H 1361 (2-4)

Auditing as a subdivision: H 1624 (2)

Auditoriums

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Australia

Qualification of geographic headings: H 810 (1)

Abbreviations of states: H 810 (8)

Author-title subject headings

SEE Name-title subject headings

Authority records, Descriptive

SEE Name authority records

Authority records for subject headings

SEE Subject authority records

Authority research for subject heading proposals: H 202

Authorization of headings for geographic subdivision: H 364

Authors, English

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1155.2

Authors, Literary

SEE Authors, English

Literary authors, Groups of

Literary authors, Individual

Autobiography

SEE Biography

Automobiles

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1195

Autonomous communities as a subdivision: H 713

Autonomous regions as a subdivision: H 713

Avalanches

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

Awards: H 1265

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Azerbaijan: H 1023 (2-4)

- B -

Ballads

Language qualifiers for musical works: H 1916.3 (2), H 1917 (1)

Music genre vs. folklore genre: H 1627 (4)

Banks

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Bars

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Basins, Geological
 Formulating headings: H 800 (7)

Basins, River
 SEE Watersheds

Bathhouses
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Baths, Ancient
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Battles
 Assignment of subject headings: H 1285 (3-5)
 Subject heading proposals: H 1285 (1-3)
 Indian battles: H 1285 (3)

Bays
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5

Belarus: H 1023 (2-4)

Belles lettres
 SEE Literatures
 specific literatures and genres

Beowulf
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1155.8

Berlin: H 945 (2-3)
 Broader terms for entities in Berlin: H 375
 Geographic area codes: H 945 (3)
 Geographic subdivision: H 945 (3)

BGN decisions
 Citing in subject authority records: H 203 (3-4)
 Obtaining the approved form: H 690 (2)
 Use in selecting the form of a heading: H 690 (3)

Bible
 SEE ALSO Sacred works
 Assignment of subject headings: H 1295
 Commentaries: H 1435 (3)
 Establishing [. . .] in the **Bible** headings: H 1295 (1)
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1188
 Versions or translations: H 1300
 Commentaries: H 1435 (3)

Biblical characters
 Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Biblical teaching as a subdivision: H 1295 (2)

Bibliographic file maintenance: H 165

Bibliographies, Annotated
 SEE Annotated bibliographies

Bibliographies about individual persons: H 1322
 Bibliographies of bibliographies: H 1325
 Bibliographies of periodicals: H 1927 (2)
Bibliography–Early as a subdivision: H 1576 (3)
Bibliography–Exhibitions as a subdivision: H 1593 (2)
 SEE ALSO Bio-bibliography as a subdivision
 Bibliographies about individual persons: H 1322
 Catalogs of library materials: H 1361
 Government publications: H 1643 (2)
 Lists of imprints on a topic: H 1660 (2)
 Bilateral agreements: H 2227 (3)
 Bilingual dictionaries: H 1540 (1, 2)
Bio-bibliography as a subdivision: **H 1328**
Bio-bibliography–Dictionaries as a subdivision: H 1328
 Biographical fiction: H 1790 (3)
 Biography: H 1330
 SEE ALSO Partial biography
 Biographical fiction: H 1790 (3)
 Coding in field 008
 Books: Appendix F (2-4)
 Continuing resources (Serials): Appendix G (2)
 Composers: H 1438 (1)
 Limitation of four personal names assigned to biographical works: H 1330 (2)
 Personal narratives: H 1928 (1)
Biography as a subdivision
 SEE ALSO Bio-bibliography as a subdivision
 Animals: H 1720 (1)
 Correspondence: H 1480 (2)
 [. . .], **House of–Biography** not used: H 1574 (2)
 Literary authors: H 1330 (2)
 Non-free-floating usage: H 1330 (4)
 Places: H 1845 (4)
 Biography of women: H 1330 (3)
 SEE ALSO Wives of famous men
 Biological names
 Assignment of classification numbers: H 1332 (5)
 Capitalization: Appendix B (8)
 Headings previously unprinted in *Library of Congress Subject Headings*: H 1332 (5)
 Geographic subdivision allowed at any taxonomic level: H 1332 (5)
 Subject heading proposals: H 1332
 Biological stations
 Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Blizzards

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

Blockades

Formulating headings: H 1592

Board on Geographic Names' decisions

SEE BGN decisions

Boards of trade (Chambers of commerce)

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Bodies of water

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5

Regions based on: H 1145.5 (2)

Bodies of water, International

SEE International bodies of water

Body, Organs of the

SEE Organs of the body

Body, Parts of the

SEE Parts of the body

Body, Regions of the

SEE Regions of the body

Bombardments: H 1560 (2)

Bombings

Formulating headings: H 1592

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

Bonsai collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Book collections, Private

SEE **Library** as a subdivision

Book of Mormon: H 1300

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1188

Book reviews as a subdivision: H 2021 (1)

Books and reading: H 1333 (1)

Books and reading as a subdivision: H 1333 (1-2)

Bosnia and Hercegovina: H 1055

Botanical gardens

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Boundaries as a subdivision: H 1333.5

-**Treaties** not used: H 1333.5

Boundary disputes: H 1333.5

Bridges: H 1334 (1)

Broader terms: H 1334 (8)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

British Virgin Islands

Abbreviation as geographic qualifier: H 810 (11)

Geographic subdivision practice: H 807 (8)

Broadcasting stations

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Broader terms: **H 370**, H 375

Changing references: H 195 (1-2)

Contrasted with "General see also" references: H 371 (3)

"Gaps" in the hierarchy: H 370 (5)

Geographic subject headings: H 690 (8)

Keying in subject authority records: H 200 (5-7, 16)

Musical compositions: H 250 (1)

Musical instruments: H 1918 (4)

Subdivisions under headings with nationality, ethnic group, or language qualifiers:
H 320 (2)

[topic]-[place] references: H 375

BTS

SEE Broader terms

Buddha

SEE Gautama Buddha

Buddhism

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1185

Building details: H 1334 (9)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Buildings and structures

SEE ALSO specific types of buildings and structures

Assignment of subject headings: H 1334 (10)

Established as street addresses: H 1334 (7)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Geographic qualifiers: H 1334 (3-6)

Buildings in London, England: H 1334 (4)

Buildings on islands: H 1334 (4)

Occupied by corporate bodies: H 1334 (1)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Subject heading proposals: H 1334 (1-9)

Buildings, structures, etc. as a subdivision: H 832 (1), H 1334 (1, 9), **H 1334.5**

Airports: H 1211

Not used as broader term for structures in cities: H 375, H 1334 (1)

Bus terminals

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Business parks

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

- C -

Campaigns as a subdivision: H 1285 (3)

Camps

SEE ALSO Concentration camps

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Canadian provinces: H 713

As geographic subdivisions: H 830 (5)

As qualifiers in geographic headings: H 810 (1)

Abbreviations of provinces: H 810 (8)

Canals

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11), H 690 (1)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5

Cancelling subject headings: H 193 (5-6)

Adding 682 notes to explain cancellations: H 193.5

UF references from cancelled forms: H 193 (2), H 373 (2)

Cancer

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1150

Cantons as a subdivision: H 713

Capitalization: Appendix B

Awards, medals, prizes, etc.: H 1265 (1)

Geographic headings: Appendix B (9), H 690 (7)

Capitols

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Capture, [date] as a subdivision: H 1560 (2)

Cardinal numerals

SEE Numerals

Caribbean Islands

SEE Islands of the Caribbean

Caricatures and cartoons

SEE Comic characters

Comic strips

Cartoon characters: H 1430

SEE ALSO Fictitious characters

Cartoons: H 1430

Case studies as a subdivision: H 1350

Cases as a subdivision: H 1350

Cases, clinical reports, statistics as a subdivision

Discontinued: H 1350

Cassettes, Catalogs of

SEE **Audiotope catalogs** as a subdivision

Film catalogs as a subdivision

Castles: H 1334 (1)
 -Capture, [date]: H 1560 (2)
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)
 -Siege, [date]: H 1560 (2)
Casualties-Statistics as a subdivision: H 2095 (2)
 Catalogs, Exhibition
 Artistic photography: H 1255 (3-4)
 Catalogs, Library
 SEE Audiovisual materials-Catalogs
 Library catalogs
 Manuscript collections-Catalogs
 Microform catalogs
 Union catalogs
 [specific form] as a subdivision, e.g. **Film catalogs** as a subdivision
 Catalogs, Publishers'
 SEE Publishers' catalogs
 Catalogs, Union
 SEE Union catalogs
Catalogs and collections as a subdivision
 Musical instruments: H 1360 (3), H 1427 (1-2)
 Natural objects: H 1360 (3), H 1427 (2-3)
 Use of geographic subdivision for location of collection: H 1427 (1)
Catalogs as a subdivision: H 1360
 Archives: H 1230 (2), H 1361 (5)
 Collections of objects: H 1360, H 1427 (2), H 1670 (3)
 Library materials: H 1361
 Manuscript collections: H 1361 (4-6)
 Source materials: H 2080 (5)
 Catalogs of manuscript collections: H 1361 (4-6)
 Categories of headings established as subject or name headings: H 405
 Cathedrals
 Established as name headings: H 405 (5)
Catholic Church
 -Foreign relations: H 1629 (2)
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1187
Cattle
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1147
Cavalry as a subdivision: H 1159 (2)
 Caves
 Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)
 Subject heading proposals: H 1225 (4)

Celebrations

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Celestial bodies

As geographic subdivisions: H 830 (9)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Subdivisions under places not used: H 1140 (1)

Cemeteries: H 1365

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Cemetery sites, Archaeological

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Census as a subdivision: H 1366

Central, Northern, Southern, etc., as qualifiers

Headings for regions: H 760 (4, 5)

Centuries: H 620

Chambers of commerce

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Changing existing subject headings: H 193

Changing references in subject authority records: H 195

Chapels

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Characters, Special

SEE Special characters

Checklist for authority research on subject heading proposals: H 202 (9)

Checklist for subject heading proposals: H 200 (11)

Chemicals

Pattern headings: H 1149

Children's fiction

SEE Juvenile fiction

Children's films

SEE Juvenile films

Children's literature

SEE **Juvenile literature** as a subdivision

Children's plays

SEE Juvenile drama

Children's poetry

SEE Juvenile poetry

Children's sound recordings

SEE Juvenile sound recordings

China: H 925

Chinese subject headings (Non-Roman): H 182

Chorus music headings

Construction: H 1917.5 (32-38)

Christian denominations

Adjectival qualifiers for subject headings: H 306 (1)

-Apologetic works: H 1472 (1)

Assigning subject headings: H 1187 (1), H 1998, H 2015

-Controversial literature: H 1472

Corporate body headings established as name headings: H 405 (6)

-Directories: H 1558 (2-3)

Establishing [*topic*]-**Baptists, [Catholic Church, etc.]**: H 2015 (2)

Establishing [*topic*]-**Religious aspects-Baptists, [Catholic Church, etc.]**: H 1998 (2-3)

Headings naming a denomination's music not assigned: H 1917 (3)

-Liturgy-Texts: H 2190 (3)

Pattern heading: H 1187

Christian life: H 2015.5 (1)

Christian sects

SEE Christian denominations

Chronological headings: H 620

Chronological subdivisions: H 620, H 1075 (2)

Art: H 1148 (2-3)

-Foreign relations: H 870 (3)

-History: H 1647 (2-3)

Jazz and popular music: H 1916.5 (2-4)

Musical compositions: H 1160 (2-3)

Chronology: H 1367

Chronology as a subdivision: H 1367

Churches

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Circuses

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Cities

SEE ALSO City parks

City sections

Extinct cities (pre-1500)

Natural features in cities

names of specific cities

-Buildings, structures, etc.: H 832 (1), **H 1334.5**

Airports: H 1211

Not used as broader term for structures in cities: H 375, H 1334 (1)

Cities assigned directly as geographic subdivisions: H 830 (7)

"City flip" discontinued: H 832 (1)

-Description and travel: H 1530

Disasters, riots, demonstrations, etc.: H 832 (1), **H 1560**

Cities (*Continued*)

Event headings as subdivisions under cities: H 1592 (9)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140

Geographic qualifiers for entities in cities: H 810 (5)

Buildings: H 1334 (4)

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 832

[...] **Metropolitan Area:** H 362 (1), **H 790** (1-3)

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)

[...] **Region:** H 362 (2), **H 790** (1, 4)

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)

[...] **Suburban Area:** H 362 (2), **H 790** (1, 3)

Subdivisions formerly used under cities: H 832 (2-3)

Citing sources in subject authority records: H 200 (7-8, 17), **H 203**

Authority research guidelines: H 202 (3-8)

Citizen participation as a subdivision: H 1942 (3)

City districts

SEE City sections

"City flip"

Discontinued: **H 832**, H 1560 (1)

City halls: H 1334 (1)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

City parks

SEE ALSO Parks

Assignment of subject headings: H 1925 (6)

Geographic qualifiers: H 810 (5)

City sections: H 720

Established as name headings: H 405 (6), H 720 (1)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140

Geographic subdivision: H 720 (2), **H 830** (4)

City streets

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13), H 690 (1)

Subject heading proposals: H 2098

Geographic qualifiers: H 2098 (1-2)

Use of vernacular: H 2098 (1)

Civic centers

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Civil trials: H 2228 (2-3)

Civil wars

Pattern heading: H 1200

Civilization: H 1370

SEE ALSO Ethnic groups
Religious sects
Ancient peoples

Influence of one civilization on another: H 1370 (4)

Special civilizations of particular places: H 1370 (3)

[topic] and civilization: H 1370 (5)

Types of civilization: H 1370 (2)

Civilization as a subdivision: H 1370 (2-3)

Period subdivisions: H 1370 (3)

CJK subject headings: H 182

Clans

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Clarinet

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1161

Classes of persons

SEE ALSO Ancient peoples
Ethnic groups
Indians
Literary authors, Groups of
Nationalities

[...] as [...] headings: H 360

Biography: H 1330 (2-4)

Immigrants: H 1581 (3)

Persons with multifaceted careers: H 1330 (3)

-Correspondence: H 1480 (2)

-Diaries: H 1538

-Directories: H 1558 (1)

Ethnic groups as qualifiers: H 351

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1100

[...] in [...] headings: H 360

Nationalities as qualifiers: H 350

-Portraits: H 1935 (2)

-Psychological testing: H 2186

-Religious life: H 2015.5 (1-2)

Classical and ancient works: H 1412

Classification as a subdivision

Folklore materials: H 1627 (2)

Classification numbers in subject authority records: **H 365**

Adding numbers to new records: H 200 (3, 15)

Biological names: H 1332 (5)

Changing numbers in existing records: H 193 (3), **H 196**

Classification numbers in subject authority records (*Continued*)

Literature headings: H 365 (2)

Musical instrument headings: H 365 (2), H 1918 (5)

Club houses

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Coding headings (*May Subd Geog*), (*Not Subd Geog*), etc.: H 364

Coin collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Coliseums

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Collected works as a subdivision

Discontinued: H 1425

Collections, Public or Private

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Collections as a subdivision: H 1425

Collections of documents: H 1643 (2)

Collections of manuscripts: H 1855 (8, 19-21)

Collections of objects

Assignment of subject headings: H 1427 (2-5)

Catalogs: H 1360, H 1427 (2)

–**Indexes** not used: H 1670 (3)

Partial title added entries for names of collections: H 1427 (3)

Subdivisions for types of collections: H 1427 (1)

Collections of treaties: H 2227 (1-2)

Collective farms

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Collective settlements

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Colleges

SEE ALSO Universities and colleges

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Colonies of individual countries

SEE ALSO **Territories and possessions** as a subdivision

Pattern heading: H 1149.5

Comarcas: H 760 (3)

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Comets

Established as subject headings: H 405 (10)

Comfort stations, Public

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Comic characters: H 1430

SEE ALSO Fictitious characters

Comic strips: H 1430
 Established as name headings: H 405 (6)
 Commas
 SEE Punctuation
 Commentaries on commentaries: H 1435 (4)
 Commentaries on individual works
 Assignment of subject headings: H 1435 (2-6)
 Anonymous classics: H 1435 (3)
 Converting form headings to topical equivalents: H 1435 (5)
 Sacred works: H 1435 (3)
 Treatment of a work as an edition or as a commentary: H 1435 (1)
 Treatment of works consisting of both original text and commentary: H 1435 (6)
Commercial treaties as a subdivision: H 2227 (2)
 Commonwealth of Independent States: H 1023 (4)
 Communes
 Established as name headings: H 405 (6)
 Communities, Planned
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)
 Community centers
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)
 Competitions
 Established as name headings: H 405 (6)
 Composers: H 1438
 Biography: H 1438 (1)
 –Criticism and interpretation: H 1438 (1)
 Facsimiles of manuscripts: H 1595 (2)
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110, H 1438 (1)
 Works about specific compositions: H 1438 (2)
 Works about their music with a specific focus or on a specific form: H 1438 (1, 3)
 Compositions, Musical
 SEE Musical compositions
 Compound family names: H 1631 (4)
 Compound subject headings: H 310
 Computer languages
 SEE ALSO **Machine translating** as a subdivision
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)
 Computer networks
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)
 Computer programs, Individual: H 2070 (2-3)
 Established as name headings: H 405 (6)
Computer programs as a subdivision: H 2070 (1)
 Computer simulation: H 2040 (2)

Computer software: H 2070
 Individual programs established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Computer systems
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Concentration camps
 Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Concert halls
 Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Concordances as a subdivision: H 1670 (3)

Concordats: H 2227 (1)

Concrete
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1158

Conferences
 Coding in field 008
 Books: Appendix F (1)
 Continuing resources (Serials): Appendix G (2)
 Established as name headings: H 1592 (2)

Conglomerate corporations, Asian
 SEE Asian conglomerate corporations

Congo: H 928

Congolese as an adjectival qualifier: H 928 (3)

Congresses: H 1460
 Congresses as a subdivision: H 1205 (1), **H 1460**
 Congresses–Attendance as a subdivision: H 1460 (2)

Conservation districts
 Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Constitutional amendments: H 1465 (4-5)

Constitutional history: H 1465 (5)

Constitutional law: H 1465 (2-3)

Constitutions: H 1465
 Corporate bodies: H 1465 (6)

Constructing subject headings: H 180 (7-8)
 Music: H 250, H 1438 (2), H 1916.3 (1), H 1917.5
 Musical instruments: H 1918

Construction industry
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1153

Content designation
 SEE Tagging subject headings
 Subfield coding

Contests
 Established as name headings: H 405 (6), H 1592 (2)

Continents

As geographic subdivisions: H 830 (6)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140

Contracts: H 1468

Contracts and specifications as a subdivision

Discontinued: H 1468 (1), H 2083 (1)

Controversial literature as a subdivision: H 1472

Convention centers

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Convents

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Conversion tables as a subdivision: H 2160

Cooking: H 1475

Cooking ingredients: H 1475 (2)

Establishing headings: H 1475 (5-6)

Cooking styles: H 1475 (2)

Copper

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1149

Core level records: H 170

Corn

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1180

Corporate bodies

SEE ALSO specific types of corporate bodies

Biography: H 1330 (4)

Buildings occupied by corporate bodies: H 1334 (1)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (10)

Constitutions: H 1465 (6)

-Directories: H 1558 (2)

Dividing by place: H 364 (5), **H 475**

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1105

-History-Chronology: H 1367 (2)

Name changes: H 460

Named events focused on a corporate body: H 1592 (7)

[. . .] **Region** headings based on corporate bodies: H 760 (4)

Tagging in subject authority records: H 200 (4)

Corporate bodies, Jurisdictional

SEE Geographic name headings

Corporate bodies, Non-jurisdictional

SEE Corporate bodies

Correcting subject headings in bibliographic records: H 165

Correctional institutions

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Correspondence as a subdivision: H 1480
Classes of persons: H 1480 (2)
Ethnic groups: H 1480 (2)
Correspondence of individual persons: H 1480
-**History-Sources** not used under headings assigned to correspondence: H 2080 (2)
-**Sources** not used under headings assigned to correspondence: H 2080 (2)
Countries, cities, etc. as name headings
SEE Geographic name headings
Country clubs
Established as name headings: H 405 (6)
Counts: H 1574 (3-4)
Coups d'etat
Pattern heading: H 1200
Courthouses
Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)
Crematories
Established as name headings: H 405 (6)
Criminal trials: H 2228 (2)
Criticism and interpretation as a subdivision
Composers: H 1438 (1)
Croatia: H 1055
Crops
Pattern heading: H 1180
Cross-cultural studies as a subdivision: H 1510
Cross references
SEE Broader terms
Narrower terms
Related terms
"Used for" references
Cruises
Dates in headings for specific cruises: H 1078
Formulating headings: H 1592
Cuisines, National: H 1475 (2)
Cultural revolutions
Formulating headings: H 1592
Culture
Definition and comparison with **Civilization**: H 1370 (1)
Cultures
SEE Archaeological periods and culture
Civilization
Customhouses
Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Cyclones

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

- D -

Dams

Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Dance halls

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Databases: H 1520

Serially issued databases: H 1580.5 (1)

Databases as a subdivision: H 1520, H 1580.5

Dates

Abbreviations: Appendix A (3-4)

Punctuation of open dates: Appendix D (3)

Dates in subdivisions

SEE ALSO **Early works to 1800** as a subdivision

"Period subdivisions" as a subtopic under specific topics

Abbreviations: Appendix A (3-4)

Headings for specific events: H 1078

Days, Special: H 1592

Decades, Special: H 1592

Decorations: H 1265

Deities

SEE ALSO Greek and Roman gods

Assignment of subject headings: H 1795 (2)

Tagging in subject authority records: H 200 (4)

Deleting subject authority records: H 193 (5-6)

Adding 682 notes to explain deletions: H 193.5

UF references from deleted forms: H 193 (2), H 373 (2)

Deltas

Formulating headings: H 800 (6)

Demonstrations

Formulating headings: H 1592

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

Denominations, Christian

SEE Christian denominations

Denominations, Religious: H 1998 (2-3), H 2015 (2)

SEE ALSO Christian denominations

Religious sects

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Departments as a subdivision: H 713
Description and travel as a subdivision: H 1530
 Descriptive authority records
 SEE Name authority records
 Descriptive name headings
 SEE Name authority records
 Name headings
 Deserts
 Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)
Design and construction as a subdivision: H 1532
Design as a subdivision: H 1532
Designs and plans as a subdivision: H 1532
Destruction, [date] as a subdivision: H 1560 (2)
 Details, Building: H 1334 (9)
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)
 Diacritics: Appendix C
 Diaries: H 1538
 As a literary genre: H 1538 (2)
 –**History–Sources** not used under headings assigned to diaries: H 2080 (2)
 –**Sources** not used under headings assigned to diaries: H 2080 (2)
Diaries as a subdivision: **H 1538**
 Dictionaries: H 1540
Dictionaries as a subdivision: **H 1540**, H 2184 (1)
 Acronyms–Dictionaries not used: H 1206.5
 –**Terminology–Dictionaries** not used: H 2184 (1)
 –**Terms and phrases–Dictionaries** not used: H 2184 (1)
Dictionaries, Juvenile as a subdivision: H 1540 (4)
 Dictionaries, Language
 SEE Language dictionaries
 Dictionaries, Picture
 SEE Picture dictionaries
 Dictionaries, Subject
 SEE Subject dictionaries
Diet therapy–Recipes as a subdivision: H 1475 (3)
Digests as a subdivision: H 1550
 Digital computer simulation: H 2040 (2)
 Diplomatic relations
 SEE **Foreign relations** as a subdivision
 Direct subdivision: H 830 (1-2, 5-7)
 Direct word order
 Topical subject headings: H 306

Directional qualifiers (**Northern, Southern, Central**, etc.)

Headings for regions: H 760 (4, 5)

Directories: H 1558

Directories–Bibliography: H 1558 (1)

Directories, Telephone

SEE **Telephone directories** as a subdivision

Directories as a subdivision: H 1558

Archival resources: H 1230 (3)

–**Periodicals** not used as further subdivision: H 1558 (4), H 1927 (2)

Disasters

SEE ALSO specific types of disasters

Formulating headings: H 1592

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560

Discography as a subdivision: H 1361 (3)

Discontinued subdivisions

–**Addresses, essays, lectures:** H 1210

–**Cases, clinical reports, statistics:** H 1350

–**Collected works:** H 1425

–**Contracts and specifications:** H 2083

–**Emigration and immigration–Biography:** H 1581 (1)

–**Exploring expeditions:** H 1564 (1)

–**Foreign population:** H 1581 (1)

–**Government publications:** H 1643 (1)

–**Influence of [. . .]:** H 1675 (1)

–**Influence on [. . .]:** H 1675 (1)

–**Legends and stories:** H 1720 (1)

–**Socioeconomic status:** H 1578 (1), H 2055 (1)

–**Stories:** H 1790 (2)

–**Suburbs and environs:** H 790 (3)

–**Theater disaster, [date]:** H 1560 (2)

–**Yearbooks:** H 2400

Discoveries in geography: H 1564 (1)

Discovery and exploration as a subdivision: H 1564

–**History** not used: H 1564 (1)

Diseases

Pattern heading: H 1150

Dispensaries

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Dissertations: H 1570

Dividing corporate name headings geographically: H 364 (5), **H 475**

Division of the world of named entities: H 405

Docks

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Documents, Collections of: H 1643 (2)

Domes as building details: H 1334 (1, 9)

Domestic animals

SEE ALSO Animals

Biological names: H 1332 (6)

Pattern heading: H 1147

Domestic plants

SEE ALSO Plants

Biological names: H 1332 (6)

Dividing by place: H 1332 (6)

Doors as building details: H 1334 (1, 8)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Doubling on two or more musical instruments: H 1917.5 (8)

Drama: H 1780

Period subdivisions: H 1156 (2)

Drama, English

SEE **English drama**

Drama, Folk

SEE **Folk drama**

Drama, Juvenile

SEE Juvenile drama

Drama as a subdivision: H 1780

Fiction films: H 2230 (2)

Fictitious characters: H 1610 (2)

Musical works: H 1916.3 (4), H 2075 (3)

Place names: H 910 (2)

Dramatists

SEE Literary authors, Groups of
Literary authors, Individual

Drugs

Pattern heading: H 1149

-Testing: H 2186 (2)

Duets

Music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (10-11, 14-15, 30)

Subject heading proposals: H 250 (3), H 1917.5 (10-11)

Dukes: H 1574 (3-4)

Dwellings

SEE ALSO Buildings and structures

Broader terms: H 1334 (8)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Dynasties: H 1574
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1120
Subject heading proposals: H 1574 (1-2)

- E -

Earls: H 1574 (3-4)
Early cities
 SEE Extinct cities (pre-1500)
Early printed books: H 1576 (4)
Early works: H 1576
Early works to 1800 as a subdivision: H 1576
 Commentaries: H 1435 (4)
Earthquakes
 Establishing individual earthquakes: H 1560 (5)
 Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)
East Germany
 SEE Germany
Ecclesiastical entities that are also names of places
 Established as name headings: H 405 (6)
 Not treated as geographic headings: H 830 (9)
 Not used as geographic subdivisions: H 830 (9)
Ecological stations
 Established as name headings: H 405 (6)
Economic conditions as a subdivision: H 1578
 Period subdivisions: H 1578 (2)
Editions: H 175
 Deleting **–Addresses, essays, lectures** from earlier editions of a work: H 1210
 Deleting **–Collected works** from earlier editions of a work: H 1425
 Treatment of a work containing commentary as an edition or commentary:
 H 1435 (1)
Editions of visual materials: H 2230 (3)
Education as a subdivision: H 1579
 Contrasted with **–Training of:** H 2217 (2)
Educational evaluation: H 1591 (2)
Educational institutions, Individual
 Established as name headings: H 405 (6)
 Pattern heading: H 1151
 Yearbooks: H 2400
Educational institutions, Types of
 Pattern heading: H 1151.5

[. . .], Effect of [. . .] on

Discontinued: H 1580 (2)

Effect of [. . .] on as a subdivision

Free-floating when established under pattern headings: H 1580 (2)

Subject heading proposals: H 1580 (2)

Effect on [. . .] as a subdivision

Not used: H 1580 (1)

Electronic serials: H 1580.5

Embassies

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Emigrants

SEE Immigrants

Emigration and immigration: H 1581

Emigration and immigration as a subdivision: H 1581

Emigration and immigration–Biography as a subdivision

Discontinued: H 1581 (1)

Emigration and immigration–Government policy as a subdivision: H 1581 (2)

Emigration policy

SEE **Emigration and immigration–Government policy** as a subdivision

Empires

Assigned directly as geographic subdivisions: H 830 (6)

Enactments, Legislative: H 1715

England

Contrasted with **Great Britain**: H 955 (1)

Geographic subdivision: H 955

Law cataloging: H 955

Qualification of geographic headings

Use of counties to resolve conflicts: H 810 (4)

English drama

Period subdivisions: H 1156 (2)

English language

SEE ALSO **Translating** as a subdivision

–Dictionaries: H 1540 (1)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1154

–Glossaries, vocabularies, etc.: H 1540 (1)

Period subdivisions: H 1154 (1)

–Terms and phrases: H 1540 (1), H 2184 (1)

–Textbooks for foreign speakers: H 2187 (2)

–Texts: H 2190 (1)

English literature

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1156

Period subdivisions: H 1156 (2)

Epidemics

Formulating headings: H 1592

Eruptions of volcanoes

Formulating headings: H 1592 (5)

Establishing subject headings

SEE Subject heading proposals

"Subject heading proposals" as a subtopic under specific topics

Estates

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Estonia: H 1023 (2-4)

Estuaries

Formulating headings: H 800 (6), H 1145.5 (2)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5

Ethics, Professional

SEE **Professional ethics**

Ethnic groups

SEE ALSO Ancient peoples

Clans

Ethnic groups in the United States

Indians

Tribes (Ethnic groups)

Biography: H 1330 (3)

-Civilization not used: H 1370 (2)

-Correspondence: H 1480 (2)

-Diaries: H 1538 (1)

-Directories: H 1558 (1)

Folklore: H 1627 (2-3)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1103

Free-floating subdivisions under headings for classes of persons with ethnic qualifiers:
H 1100

-Government relations: H 1942 (2)

-History-Chronology: H 1367

Immigrants: H 1581 (3, 5)

-Languages-Texts: H 2190 (2)

Music: H 1916.3 (2, 6), **H 1917**

Philosophy: H 1929

-Politics and government: H 1942 (2)

-Psychological testing: H 2186

Qualifiers for subject headings: H 320, H 351

System of law: H 1718

-Treaties: H 2227 (1)

Ethnic groups in the United States: H 1919.5 (3-4)

SEE ALSO Ethnic groups

Newspapers: H 1920

Systems of law: H 1718 (1)

Ethnic qualifiers for subject headings

SEE Subject heading qualifiers–Ethnic qualifiers

Ethnic studies: H 2110 (1)

Ethnological collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Ethnomusicological collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Evaluation: H 1591

Evaluation as a subdivision: H 1591

Events

SEE ALSO specific types of events

Capitalization: Appendix B (6-7)

Biography: H 1330 (4)

Dates in subdivisions for specific events: H 1078

Drama: H 1780 (4)

Established as name or subject headings: H 405 (7, 12), H 1592

Established as subdivisions

Subfield coding: H 1592 (6)

Fiction: H 1790 (5)

Formulating subject headings as subdivisions: H 1592 (6-10)

Formulating subject headings in phrase form: H 1592 (3-5)

–Personal narratives: H 1928 (1)

Poetry: H 1800 (4)

–Songs and music: H 2075

Subject headings to bring out subordinate jurisdictions when event headings are
formulated as subdivisions under larger jurisdictions: H 1592 (9-10)

Tagging headings in subject authority records: H 200 (4)

Examinations as a subdivision: H 2186 (2)

Excavations (Archaeology): H 1225 (3)

Excerpts, Arranged as a subdivision: H 1160 (2), H 1917.5 (28)

Exhibition buildings

Broader terms: H 1334 (8)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Geographic qualifier: H 1334 (5)

Exhibition catalogs

Artistic photography: H 1255 (3-4)

Exhibitions: H 1593

Established as name headings: H 405 (7), H 1592 (2)

Individual named exhibitions: H 1593 (2-3)

Exhibitions as a subdivision: H 1593

–**Catalogs** not used: H 1593 (1)

Expeditions, Military

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Expeditions, Scientific

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Experiment stations

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Exploration, History of

SEE **Discoveries (in geography)**

Discovery and exploration

Exploration, Space: H 1564 (2)

Exploring expeditions as a subdivision

Discontinued: H 1564 (1)

Explosions

Formulating headings: H 1592

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

Expositions

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Express highway interchanges: H 2098 (3)

Extinct cities (pre-1500)

SEE ALSO Cities

Contrasted with archaeological sites: H 715 (3)

–**Description and travel** not used: H 1530 (1)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12), H 690 (1), H 715 (1)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (3)

Regions surrounding: H 715 (3); H 760 (1)

Subject heading proposals: H 715

(Extinct city) as a qualifier: H 715 (2, 4)

- F -

Fables: H 1627 (4)

Facsimiles as a subdivision: H 1595, H 1855 (5, 9, 11, 13, 15, 16)

Facsimiles of manuscripts: H 1595 (1-2); H 1855

Facsimiles of maps: H 1595 (2)

Factories

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Fairgrounds

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Fairs

Established as name headings: H 405 (7), H 1592 (2)

Fairy tales: H 1627 (4)

Families

SEE Family names

Families, Royal

SEE Royal houses

Family as a subdivision: H 1631 (6)

Family history

SEE Genealogy

Family names: H 1631

Capitalization: Appendix B (5-6)

-Directories: H 1558 (1)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1120

-Museums, relics, etc.: H 1916 (2)

Subject heading proposals: H 1631 (3-4)

Aristocratic or noble families: H 1574 (3-4)

Tagging headings in subject authority records: H 200 (4)

Famines

Formulating headings: H 1592

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

Farms

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12), H 690 (1)

Feasts

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Feature films: H 1913 (2)

Federal Republic of Germany

SEE Germany

Ferry buildings

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Festivals

Established as name headings: H 405 (7), H 1592 (2)

Festivals, Folk

Established as name headings: H 405 (7), H 1592 (2)

Festschriften: H 1600

Fiction: H 1790

SEE ALSO Biographical fiction

Historical fiction

Juvenile fiction

Fiction as a subdivision: H 1790
 Animals: H 1720 (1)
 Place names: H 910 (2)
 Fictitious characters: H 1610 (2)
 Fiction films: H 1913 (1)
 Fiction radio programs: H 1969.5 (1)
 Fiction television programs: H 1913 (1)
 Fictitious characters: H 1610
 SEE ALSO Comic characters
 Legendary characters
 Collections of fiction featuring a character: H 1790 (2)
 Criticism of fiction about a character: H 1790 (4)
 Establishing individual characters: H 1610 (1-2)
 Individual works of fiction: H 1610 (2-3)
 File maintenance, Bibliographic: H 165
Film catalogs as a subdivision: H 1361 (3)
 Contrasted with **-Indexes**: H 1670 (1)
 Films: H 1913; H 2230
 SEE ALSO Juvenile films
Finance as a subdivision: H 1624 (1)
Finance, Personal as a subdivision: H 1624 (2)
 Fine art
 SEE Art
 Fire stations
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)
 Fires
 Formulating headings: H 1592
 Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)
 First order political divisions of countries
 SEE Geographic name headings-First order political divisions of countries
 Fish hatcheries
 Established as name headings: H 405 (7)
Fishes
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1147
 Fleets
 Use of **-Regimental histories**: H 1995
 Floods
 Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)
Folk drama: H 1627 (4)
 Folk festivals and celebrations
 Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Folk literature: H 1627 (1, 4, 5)
 Translations: H 1627 (5)

Folk music: H 1917
 Music genre vs. folklore genre: H 1627 (4)

Folk poetry
 Ethnic qualifiers not used: H 1627 (1)
 Literary genre vs. folklore genre: H 1627 (1)

Folk songs
 Language of text: H 1916.3 (2,5), H 1917 (1)
 Music genre vs. folklore genre: H 1627 (4)

Folklore: H 1627
 Collections of folklore texts: H 1627 (2)
 -**History and criticism** not used: H 1627 (7)
 Works about folklore: H 1627 (2)

Folklore as a subdivision: **H 1627**, H 1720 (1)
 Not used under inherently folkloric topics: H 1627 (4)

Foot
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1164

Forecasting: H 1628
 Subdivision preferred over phrase headings: H 1628 (1)

Forecasting as a subdivision: H 1628

Forecasts as a subdivision
 Usage under centuries: H 1628 (2)

Foreign countries as a subdivision
 Nationalities: H 1919.5 (2, 4)
 [. . .] **in foreign countries** discontinued: H 1919.5 (1)

Foreign influences as a subdivision: H 1675 (3-4)

Foreign language teaching films: H 2230 (2)

Foreign languages, Subject headings for
SEE ALSO Artificial languages
 French language
 Romance languages
 Translating as a subdivision
 -**Acronyms:** H 1206.5
 -**Dictionaries:** H 1540 (1)
 -**Glossaries, vocabularies, etc.:** H 1540 (1)
 Pattern headings: H 1154
 Qualifying subject headings by languages: H 320
 UF references: H 373 (4)
 -**Readers:** H 1975 (1)
 -**Study and teaching:** H 2110 (3)
 -**Terms and phrases:** H 1540 (1)

Foreign languages, Subject headings for (*Continued*)

–**Textbooks for foreign speakers:** H 2187 (2)

–**Texts:** H 2190 (1)

Foreign languages, Subject headings in

Articles in the initial position in subject headings: H 290

Capitalization: Appendix B (10), H 690 (7)

Diacritics and special characters: Appendix C

Establishing subject headings in foreign languages

SEE ALSO "Subject heading proposals–Use of vernacular" as a subtopic under
specific topics

Buildings and structures: H 1334 (2)

Geographic headings: H 690 (4-7)

Transliteration: H 690 (6)

Musical instruments: H 1918 (1-2, 7)

Topical headings: H 315

Parallel Arabic/Persian non-Roman subject headings: H 181

Parallel CJK non-Roman subject headings: H 182

UF references in foreign languages: H 373 (3)

Foreign population as a subdivision

Discontinued: H 1581 (1)

Foreign public opinion as a subdivision: H 1955 (4)

Foreign relations as a subdivision: H 1629

–**History**–[*period subdivision*] not used: H 1629 (1)

Use of chronological subdivisions: H 870 (3)

Foreign relations–[*dates*]: H 870 (3)

Foreign relations–**Treaties** as a subdivision: H 2227 (1)

Foreign terms

SEE Foreign languages, Subject headings in

Forest districts

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Forest reserves

SEE Reserves

Forests

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13), H 690 (1)

Forests (Administrative agencies)

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Forks of rivers: H 800 (5-6)

Form/genre headings

Moving image works: H 1913

Subject heading proposals: H 1913 (3-4)

Music: **H 250**, H 1916.3 (2-3), H 1916.5 (1), H 1917 (1,3), **H 1917.5**

Form/genre headings (*Continued*)

Radio programs: H 1969.5

Subject heading proposals: H 1969.5 (2-3)

Form subdivisions: H 180 (6), H 1075 (2-3)

Commentaries: H 1435 (4)

Literature about music: H 1160 (3-4), H 1916.3 (6, 8)

Music of ethnic, national, and religious groups: H 1916.3 (2-3), H 1917 (1-2, 6)

Musical compositions: H 1160 (1, 3, 6), H 2075

Musical presentation or format: H 250 (9-10), H 1160 (6-8)

Use of subfield code "v": H 1075 (3)

Former Soviet republics: H 1023 (2-4)

Fortresses (Structures): H 1334 (1)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Forts

SEE ALSO Buildings and structures

Military installations, Active

Military installations, Inactive

-Capture, [date]: H 1560 (2)

-Siege, [date]: H 1560 (2)

Fossils: H 1332 (7)

Inverted headings: H 306 (4)

Founders of religions

Biography: H 1330 (4)

Established subdivisions vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1110 (2)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110

Subdivisions for events focused on: H 1592 (6)

Fountains

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Free-floating subdivisions: H 1095

SEE ALSO Free-floating terms phrases

Subdivisions

Broader terms: H 370 (7)

"General see also" references: **H 371** (2, 3) H 1146 (1)

"General see" references: H 374 (2)

Subdividing by place: H 860

Used under:

Bodies of water, etc.: H 1145.5

Classes of persons: H 1100

Corporate bodies: H 1105

Ethnic groups: H 1103

Family names: H 1120

Musical compositions: H 1160

Free-floating subdivisions

Used under: (*Continued*)

Musical instruments: H 1161

Names of literary authors: H 1110

Names of persons: H 1110

Names of places: H 1140

Nationalities: H 1103

Pattern headings: H 1146-H 1200

Rivers: H 1145.5

Free-floating terms and phrases: **H 362**, H 1140 (12)

[...] **Metropolitan Area**: H 362 (1), **H 790 (1-3)**, H 1140 (6)

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)

[...] **Region**

City regions: H 362 (2), **H 790 (1, 4)**, H 1140 (6)

Extinct cities: H 715 (3); H 760 (1)

Geographic regions: H 362 (2), **H 760**

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)

Regions based on rivers: H 362 (2), **H 800** (8), H 1145.5 (2)

[...] **Suburban Area**: H 362 (2), **H 790** (1, 3), H 1140 (6)

French language

SEE ALSO Foreign languages, Subject headings for

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1154

Funds

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Funeral homes

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

- G -

GACs

SEE Geographic area codes

Galaxies

Established as subject headings: H 405 (10)

Galleries

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Game preserves

SEE Reserves

Games (Events)

Established as name headings: H 405 (7), H 1592 (2)

Gangs

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

"Gaps" in hierarchical reference structure: H 370 (5)

Gardens

SEE ALSO Botanical gardens

Zoological gardens

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13), H 690 (1)

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)

Gates: H 1334 (1)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Gautama Buddha

Established subdivisions vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1110 (2)

Gaza Strip: H 980

Gazetteers: H 1630

Genealogy: H 1631

Census publications: H 1366 (3)

Source materials: H 1845

Headings requiring [*place*]-**Genealogy** as an additional heading: H 1845 (2)

Subdivisions under place names used for genealogical source materials:

H 1845 (1)

Genealogy as a subdivision: H 1631 (1-2), H 1845 (1-2)

Census publications: H 1366 (3)

Genealogy-Handbooks, manuals, etc. as a subdivision: H 1631 (2)

Genealogy-Methodology as a subdivision: H 1631 (2)

General see also references: H 371

Changing an existing subject authority record: H 195 (2)

Contrasted with broader terms: H 371 (3)

Keying in subject authority records: H 200 (5, 15)

Music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (5, 22-24)

Musical instruments: H 1918 (1-2)

Pattern headings as examples in general see also references: H 371 (9),

H 1146 (1, 2)

When to establish: H 370 (4), **H 371** (3)

General see references: H 200 (5, 15), **H 374**

Genre/form headings

Moving image works: H 1913

Subject heading proposals: H 1913 (3-4)

Music: **H 250**, H 1916.3 (2-3), H 1916.5 (1), H 1917 (1,3), **H 1917.5**

Radio programs: H 1969.5

Subject heading proposals: H 1969.5 (2-3)

Genres, Literary

SEE ALSO specific literary genres

Period subdivisions used under: H 1156 (1-2)

Geographic area codes: Appendix E

Bosnia and Hercegovina: H 1055 (2)

Congo: H 928 (3)

Core level records: H 170 (2)

Croatia: H 1055 (2)

Families: H 1631 (6)

Former Soviet republics: H 1023 (5)

Former Yugoslav republics: H 1055 (2)

Gaza Strip: H 980 (5)

Genealogical works: H 1631 (6)

Golan Heights: H 980 (5)

Hong Kong: H 978 (2)

Jazz: H 1916.5 (4)

Jerusalem: H 980 (5)

Kosovo (Republic): H 1055 (2)

Macedonia (Republic): H 1055 (2)

Microforms: H 1893

Montenegro: H 1055 (2)

Non-music sound recordings: H 2230 (3)

Palestine: H 980 (5)

Popular music: H 1916.5 (4)

Serbia: H 1055 (2)

Serbia and Montenegro: H 1055 (2)

Slovenia: H 1055 (2)

Soviet Union: H 1023 (5)

Vatican City: H 1045 (1)

Visual materials: H 2230 (3)

West Bank: H 980 (5)

Yugoslavia: H 1055 (2)

Geographic headings, Jurisdictional

SEE Geographic name headings

Geographic headings, Non-jurisdictional

SEE Geographic subject headings

Geographic name headings

SEE ALSO Geographic subject headings

Place names

First order political divisions of countries: H 713

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140

Geographic subdivision information in name authority records: H 835

Geographic name headings (*Continued*)

Linear name changes in political jurisdictions

Recording subject usage information in name authority records: H 708

Use of latest name: H 708 (1), H 830 (4)

Mergers of two or more jurisdictions into one: H 710

Proposing 781 fields for name authority records: H 835 (2-3)

Splits of jurisdictions into multiple entities: H 710

Used as topical subdivisions

Subfield coding: H 830 (10)

Geographic qualifiers: H 810

Abbreviations: H 810 (3, 8-11)

Buildings and structures: H 1334 (2-6)

CJK records: H 182 (4)

Deletion of generic terms in headings for regions: H 760 (2)

Deletion of qualifiers in geographic subdivision: H 830 (7-8)

Entities in cities: H 810 (5)

Extinct cities: H 715 (2)

Islands: H 807 (1-3)

Region headings: H 760 (2)

Deleting generic terms from qualifiers: H 760 (2)

Rivers: H 800 (1-3)

Geographic regions

SEE Regions, Geographic

Geographic subdivision information

In name authority records: H 835

In subject authority records: H 364, H 836

Geographic subdivisions: H 830, H 1075 (1)

Arabic/Persian records: H 181 (3)

Authorizing headings to be divided geographically: H 364

CJK records: H 182 (3)

Corporate bodies: H 364 (5), **H 475**

Proposals to subdivide by place: H 475

Dividing topical subdivisions by place: H 860

Exceptions: H 830 (5-7)

History of geographic subdivision practice: H 830 (1-2)

Interposing place between subject headings and topical subdivisions: H 870

Jazz and popular music headings: H 1916.5 (2-3)

Limit of two levels of geographic subdivision: H 830 (3)

Music, General: H 1916.3 (3, 6)

Music of ethnic, national, and religious groups: H 1917 (1, 4-7)

Musical compositions: H 250 (11), H 1160 (2), H 1916.5 (2-3), H 1917 (1-2, 4)

Geographic subdivisions (*Continued*)

Musical instruments: H 1917 (1), H 1918 (3-4)

Brands and models: H 1918 (5)

Parks as geographic subdivisions: H 1925 (6)

Subdivisions

Further dividing by place: H 860

Subfield coding: H 830 (10)

Subject headings

Authorizing headings to be divided geographically: H 364

Dividing to the city level: **H 832**, H 1560

Proposals to divide existing headings: H 193 (1), **H 194**

Subfield coding: H 830 (10)

Subject usage information

Name authority records: H 835

Subject authority records: H 836

Geographic subject headings

SEE ALSO Geographic name headings

Geographic qualifiers

Place names

types of geographic features

Abbreviations: H 690 (6)

Articles in the initial position in subject headings: H 690 (6)

Capitalization: Appendix B (9), H 690 (7)

Free-floating subdivisions

Used under

Bodies of water, streams, etc: H 1145.5

Names of places: H 1140

Free-floating terms and phrases: H 362, H 1140 (6)

[. . .] **Metropolitan Area:** H 362 (1), H 790 (1-3), H 1140 (6)

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)

[. . .] **Region**

City regions: H 362 (2), **H 790 (1, 4)** H 1140 (6)

Extinct cities: H 715 (3), H 760 (1)

Geographic regions: H 362 (2), **H 760**

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)

Regions based on rivers: H 362 (2), **H 800** (8), H 1145.5 (2)

[. . .] **Suburban Area:** H 362 (2), **H 790 (1, 3)**, H 1140 (6)

Subject heading proposals: H 690

Authority research: H 690 (2-3)

BGN decisions: H 690 (2)

Broader terms: H 690 (8)

Geographic subject headings

Subject heading proposals (*Continued*)

English vs. vernacular forms: H 690 (4-5)

UF references: H 690 (8)

Tagging in subject authority records: H 200 (4)

Transliteration: H 690 (6)

Used as topical subdivisions

Subfield coding: H 830 (10)

Geographical names [i.e. **Names, Geographical** as a subject heading]

SEE **Names, Geographical**

Geography as a subdivision: H 1530 (1)

Geologic basins

Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Georgia (Republic): H 1023 (2-4)

German Democratic Republic

SEE Germany

German Federal Republic

SEE Germany

Germany: H 945

Glossaries, vocabularies, etc. as a subdivision: H 1540 (1), H 2184 (1)

Gods

SEE Deities

Greek and Roman gods

Golan Heights: H 980

Golf courses

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Government agencies

Catalogs of publications: H 1965

Government policy as a subdivision: H 1642

Government publications: H 1643

Publishers' catalogs: H 1965

Grain elevators

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Grasslands

Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Graveyards

SEE Cemeteries

Great Britain: H 955

Assignment of constituent countries directly as geographic subdivisions: H 830 (5)

Geographic subdivision through names of constituent countries: H 955

Geographic subdivision in law cataloging: H 955 (2-3)

Great Britain (*Continued*)

Qualification of geographic headings: H 810 (1, 8)

Use of county or region names to resolve conflicts: H 810 (4)

Great Britain-Colonies

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1149.5

Greek and Roman gods: H 1636

Groups of islands

SEE Islands

Groups of languages, Subject headings for

SEE Foreign languages, Subject headings for

Groups of persons

SEE Classes of persons

Guidebooks as a subdivision: H 1645

Gymnasiums

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

- H -

Haiti

As a geographic qualifier: H 810 (6)

Halfway houses

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Hamlet

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1155.6

Handbooks, manuals, etc. as a subdivision: H 1646

SEE ALSO **Guidebooks** as a subdivision

Tables as a subdivision

Genealogical works: H 1631 (2)

Harvard University

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1151

Hawaii: H 975

Use as a geographic qualifier: H 810 (6), H 975

Hazardous waste sites

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Headings established as name or subject headings: H 405

Heads of state

SEE Rulers and statesmen

Hearing impaired, Visual materials for: H 1913 (2)

Heart

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1164

Helplines

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Herbarium as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Herbariums

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Hierarchical references

Broader terms: **H 370**, H 375

Changing references: H 195 (1-2)

Contrasted with "General see also" references: H 371 (3)

"Gaps" in the hierarchy: H 370 (5)

Geographic names: H 690 (8)

Keying in subject authority records: H 200 (6-7, 16)

Moving image genre/form headings: H 1913 (4)

Radio genre/form headings: H 1969.5 (2)

Subdivisions under headings with nationality, ethnic group, or language
qualifiers: H 320 (2)

[topic]–**[place]** references: H 375

Narrower terms

Changing references: H 195 (1-2)

Procedure for making: H 200 (7)

Highway interchanges: H 2098 (3)

Highways

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Subject heading proposals: H 2098

Geographic qualifiers: H 2098 (1-2)

Use of vernacular: H 2098 (1)

Hijackings

Formulating headings: H 1592

Hispaniola

Not used as a geographic qualifier: H 810 (6)

Historic districts

In cities

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Not in cities

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Historic kingdoms

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (3, 6)

Historic sites

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Subject heading proposals: H 1925

Historical events

SEE Events

Historical fiction: H 1790 (3)

History

Definition and comparison with **Civilization**: H 1370 (1)

History and criticism as a subdivision

Comic strips and single panel cartoons

Not used: H 1430 (2)

Drama: H 1780 (3)

Fiction: H 1790 (4)

Folklore materials: H 1627 (2, 5-7)

Not used under **Folklore**: H 1627 (7)

Legends and romances: H 1795 (3)

Liturgical texts: H 2190 (3)

Music headings

Ethnic, national, and religious groups: H 1917 (2)

Literature and other materials about music: H 1160 (8), H 1916.3 (6)

Musical compositions: H 1160 (4)

Not used under the heading **Musical instruments** or under headings for specific instruments: H 1917 (5)

Vocal music texts: H 2190 (2)

Poetry: H 1800 (3)

Sermons: H 2032 (4)

–**Songs and music**: H 2075 (3)

History as a subdivision: H 1647

–**Bombardment, [date]**: H 1560 (2)

–**Capture, [date]**: H 1560 (2)

Chronological subdivisions: H 1647 (2-3)

–**Destruction, [date]**: H 1560 (2)

Musical instruments: H 1917 (5)

Philosophy headings: H 1647 (5)

–**Siege, [date]**: H 1560 (2)

Subdivisions not further subdivided by –**History**: H 1647 (6)

History–Chronology as a subdivision: H 1367

History, Constitutional: H 1465 (5)

History–Sources as a subdivision: H 2080

Government publications: H 1643 (2)

Not used under headings assigned to correspondence: H 1480 (2)

Homes and haunts as a subdivision

Works about buildings: H 1334 (10)

Homilies

SEE Sermons

Hong Kong (China): H 978

Hospitals

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Hotels

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Hotlines

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Houses: H 1334 (1)

Houses, Noble

SEE Noble houses

Houses, Royal

SEE Royal houses

Housing projects

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Hurricanes

Establishing individual hurricanes: H 1560 (4)

Husbands of famous women

Biography: H 1330 (4)

- I -

Illumination artists

SEE Manuscript illuminators

Illumination of manuscripts: H 1855 (2-9, 15-18)

Illustrations as a subdivision: H 1659, H 1935 (2)

Contrasted with **-Pictorial works:** H 1659 (2)

Manuscripts: H 1855 (3-4, 6-7, 15-18)

Illustrators

Artists as illustrators: H 1250 (10)

Imaginary persons

SEE Fictitious characters

Immigrants: H 1581 (2-3, 5)

Biography: H 1581 (3)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1100

Geographic subdivision: H 1581 (2)

Particular ethnic groups: H 1581 (3,5)

Immigrants' descendants

Particular ethnic groups: H 1581 (3)

Immigration

SEE Emigration and immigration

Immigration policy

SEE **Emigration and immigration-Government policy** as a subdivision

Immigration stations

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Imprints as a subdivision: H 1660

In art as a subdivision: H 362 (1); H 910 (1); H 1935 (2)

[...] **in art**: H 362 (1), H 910 (1), H 1935 (2)

[...] **in** [...] headings

[*class of persons*] **in** [*discipline*]: H 360

[*nationality*] **in** [*place*]

Replaced by [*nationality*] (*May Subd Geog*): H 1919.5 (1)

[*place*] **in** [...]: H 910

[*topic*] **in** [*topic*]

Broader terms: H 370 (9)

Contrasted with parenthetical qualifiers: H 357 (2)

In literature as a subdivision: H 362 (1); H 910 (2); H 1780 (3); H 1790 (4); H 1800 (3)

[...] **in literature**: H 362 (1), H 910 (2)

In motion pictures as a subdivision: H 910 (2)

[...] **in motion pictures**: H 910 (2)

[...] (**in religion, folklore, etc.**)

Discontinued: H 1998 (1)

In-service training as a subdivision: H 2217 (2)

[...] **in textbooks**: H 2187 (2)

[...] **in the Bible**: H 1295

Incunabula

SEE Early works

Indexes

Treated as supplementary works: H 2145

Indexes as a subdivision: **H 1670**

Indian reservations

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12), H 1925

Indians

SEE ALSO Tribes (Ethnic groups)

Folklore: H 1627 (3, 6)

-History-Chronology: H 1367 (2)

Indigenous tribes of the United States

As geographic subdivisions: H 830 (7)

-Music: H 1917 (2)

-Philosophy: H 1929

Qualifiers for subject headings: H 320, H 351

Systems of law: H 1718 (1)

-Wars

As broader term for battles: H 1285 (3)

Indians of the United States, Newspapers of: H 1920 (2)

Indigenous peoples: H 1103 (1)
 Indigenous tribes of the United States
 As geographic subdivisions: H 830 (7)
 Indirect subdivision
 SEE Geographic subdivisions
 Individual persons
 SEE Names of persons
 Individual works of art: H 1250 (12)
 Established as name headings: H 405 (7)
 Industries
 Based on products: H 1673
 -Directories: H 1558 (3)
 Pattern headings: H 1153
Influence as a subdivision: H 1580 (1), **H 1675** (1)
[. . .], Influence of: H 1580 (1)
Influence of as a subdivision
 Discontinued: H 1580 (1), H 1675 (1)
[. . .], Influence of [. . .] on: H 1580 (1)
Influence on [. . .] as a subdivision
 Discontinued: H 1580 (1), H 1675 (1)
[. . .] influences as a subdivision: H 1580 (1), H 1675 (2-3)
 Broader terms: H 1675 (3)
 Folklore materials: H 1627 (3)
Information services: H 1675.5
Information services as a subdivision: H 1675.5
 Ingredients for cooking: H 1475 (2)
 Establishing headings: H 1475 (5-6)
 Initial articles in subject headings
 SEE Articles in the initial position in subject headings
 Initialisms: Appendix A (2)
Inquisition: H 1676
Inspection as a subdivision: H 1676.5
 Institutions, Educational
 SEE Educational institutions, Individual
 Educational institutions, Types of
Instruction and study as a subdivision: H 2110 (3)
 Musical compositions: H 1160 (8)
 Musical instruments: H 1161
 Instructional materials, Music: H 1916.3 (3, 7)
 Instrumental ensembles in music form/genre headings: H 250 (1, 7), H 1917.5 (8, 18-25)
 Instruments, Musical
 SEE Musical instruments

Insulin

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1149

Insurrections

Pattern heading: H 1200

Intelligence testing as a subdivision: H 2186 (1)

Interchanges, Express highway: H 2098 (3)

Internal migration

SEE **Migration, Internal**

International agency publications: H 1643 (1)

International bodies of water

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5

Geographic qualifiers: H 810 (7)

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (6)

International conventions (Treaties): H 2227 (4)

International organizations

Regions based on: H 760 (4)

International relations: H 1942 (1)

Internet resources

Citing in subject authority records: H 203 (4)

Interviews as a subdivision: H 1678

Invasions

Formulating headings: H 1592

Inverted word order

Topical subject headings: H 306

Islam: H 1680

[. . .], **Islamic:** H 1680

Islamic law

Dividing headings geographically: H 1718

Islands: H 807

Buildings and structures on: H 1334 (4)

Entities on: H 810 (5-6), H 807 (9)

Established as name headings if jurisdictional: H 807 (1)

Established as subject headings if non-jurisdictional: H 405 (13), H 807 (1)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140

Geographic qualifiers: H 807 (1-3)

Geographic subdivision: H 807 (6-9)

Subject usage information

In name authority records: H 835 (1-3)

In subject authority records: H 836

Parks coextensive with islands: H 1925 (5)

Islands (*Continued*)

[. . .] **Region**

Headings not constructed for regions based on islands: H 760 (1)

Subject heading proposals: H 807 (1-5)

Islands of the Caribbean

Geographic subdivision: H 807 (8)

- J -

Japanese subject headings (Non-Roman): H 182

Jazz: **H 1916.5**, H 1917.5 (12)

Jerusalem: H 980

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (7)

Metropolitan Area: H 790 (1, 3)

Jesuits

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1186

Jesus Christ

Established subdivisions vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1110 (2)

-Trial: H 2228 (2)

Jewish as a qualifier: H 306 (1); H 320 (1)

Jewish way of life: H 2015.5 (1)

Jurisdictional mergers and splits: H 710

Jurisdictions

SEE Geographic name headings

Jurisdictions, Ancient (other than cities)

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Juvenile dictionaries

SEE **Dictionaries, Juvenile** as a subdivision

Juvenile drama: H 1690 (2), H 1780 (2)

Juvenile fiction: H 1690 (2), H 1790 (2)

Juvenile literature as a subdivision: H 1690

-Juvenile literature-Bibliography: H 1690 (3)

-Periodicals-Juvenile literature: H 1927 (1)

Juvenile materials: H 180 (2), **H 1690**

Coding for target audience in field 008: Appendix F (1)

Juvenile poetry: H 1690 (2), H 1800 (2)

Juvenile software: H 1690 (3)

Juvenile textbooks: H 1690 (2), H 2187 (3)

- K -

Kazakstan: H 1023 (2-4)

Kingdoms

SEE Historic kingdoms

Kings and rulers as a subdivision: H 1574 (2-3, 5)

SEE ALSO Rulers and statesmen

Koran: H 1300

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1188

Korean subject headings (Non-Roman): H 182

Kosovo (Republic): H 1055

Kyrgyzstan: H 1023 (4)

- L -

Labor laws and legislation

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1154.5

Laboratories

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Lakes

Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5

Geographic qualifiers: H 810

Lakes in cities: H 810 (5)

Land grants

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Land vehicles

Pattern heading: H 1195

Landslides

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

Language dictionaries: H 1540

Language of vocal texts: H 250 (4-5), H 1916.3 (2, 5), H 1917 (1, 4-5)

Language qualifiers for subject headings: H 306 (2)

Language teachers

-Training of: H 2217 (1)

Languages

SEE **English language**

Foreign languages, Subject headings for

French language

Romance languages

Languages, Computer

SEE ALSO **Machine translating** as a subdivision

Established as subject headings: H 405 (10)

Latest name of political jurisdictions: H 708 (1), H 830 (4)

Latin America: H 985

Latvia: H 1023 (2-4)

Law and legislation as a subdivision: H 1705

Not used in headings qualified by legal systems: H 1718 (2)

Law, Constitutional: H 1465 (2-3)

Law headings

SEE Legal headings

Law, Systems of: H 1718

LC data base

Citing in subject authority records: H 203 (4)

LC patterns for subject heading proposals

Citing in subject authority records: H 200 (9, 18), H 202 (1-2)

LCSH

SEE Subject authority records

Legal headings

SEE ALSO **Cases** as a subdivision

Digests as a subdivision

Law and legislation as a subdivision

Legal research as a subdivision

Legal status, laws, etc. as a subdivision

Research as a subdivision

Safety regulations as a subdivision

Treaties

Trials

Broader terms

Headings qualified by legal systems: H 370 (10)

Great Britain as geographic subdivision: H 955 (2-3)

-History-Sources: H 2080 (4)

-Legal research: H 1710

-Legal status, laws, etc.: H 1705

Pattern heading: H 1154.5

-Sources: H 2080 (4)

Systems of law: H 1718

-Terminology: H 2184 (2)

Legal materials: H 1705-H1715

Legal research as a subdivision: H 1710

Legal status, laws, etc. as a subdivision: H 1705

Not used in headings qualified by legal systems: H 1718 (2)

Legendary characters: H 1627 (6), H 1795
 SEE ALSO Fictitious characters
 Established as subject headings: H 1795 (1)
 Subject headings proposals: H 1795 (1)
 Tagging in subject authority records: H 200 (4)
 Legendary objects: H 1627 (6), H 1795 (1)
Legends: H 1627 (6), H 1795 (2)
 SEE ALSO **Romances**
 History and criticism: H 1795 (3)
 Legends involving religious objects: H 1627 (6), H 1795 (1)
 Qualifying by names of religions: H 1627 (6)
 Legends, Medieval
 SEE **Legends**
 Legends as a subdivision
Legends and stories as a subdivision
 Discontinued: H 1720 (1)
Legends as a subdivision: H 1627 (3-4, 6), H 1795 (2-3)
 SEE ALSO **Romances** as a subdivision
 Legislation: H 1715
 Legislative enactments: H 1715
 Legislative bodies
 Pattern heading: H 1155
Legislative history as a subdivision: H 1715 (3)
 Legislative histories: H 1715 (3)
 Letters, Foreign: Appendix C
 Letters as a literary genre: H 1480 (3)
 Letters of individual persons
 SEE Correspondence of individual persons
 Libraries
 Established as name headings: H 405 (7)
Library as a subdivision: H 1361 (1), H 1427 (1), H 1855 (8)
 Library catalogs: H 1361
 SEE ALSO Audiovisual materials–Catalogs
 Manuscript collections–Catalogs
 Microform catalogs
 Union catalogs
 [*specific form of library material*] as a subdivision
 Periodicals: H 1361 (1)
 Library districts
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)
Library of Congress Subject Headings
 SEE Subject authority records

Librettos as a subdivision: H 1160 (7), H 2190 (2)

Lighthouses

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Literary authors, Groups of

Pattern heading: H 1155.2

Qualifying by ethnic group: H 351 (2)

Qualifying by nationality: H 350 (2)

Literary authors, Individual

"Base heading" for authors who write under various names: H 430 (3)

Biography: H 1330 (2)

Facsimiles of manuscripts: H 1595 (1)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110

-History-Chronology: H 1367 (2)

-Sources: H 2080 (3)

Translations: H 2220

Literary collections as a subdivision

Fictitious characters: H 1610 (2)

Place names: H 910 (2)

Literary form

Coding in field 008: Appendix F (2)

Literary prizes: H 1265

Literary works, Individual

SEE ALSO Literatures

specific literary genres

Entered under author

Pattern heading: H 1155.6

Entered under title:

Pattern heading: H 1155.8

Manuscripts: H 1855 (5-6)

Literature

Classification numbers in subject authority records for literature headings: H 365 (2)

Collections from one place in two or more languages: H 1828

General overview of subject heading assignment: H 1775

Literature, English

SEE **English literature**

Literature, Folk

SEE Folk literature

Literature, Juvenile

SEE **Juvenile literature** as a subdivision

Literature teachers

-Training of: H 2217 (1)

Literatures

SEE ALSO Literary works, Individual
specific literatures and genres

Pattern heading: H 1156

Period subdivisions: H 1156 (2)

-Sources: H 2080 (3)

Translations: H 2220

Literatures as a subdivision: H 1828

Lithuania: H 1023 (2-4)

Liturgical texts set to music: H 250 (2), H 1916.3 (5)

Liturgical works

SEE Religious works

Liturgy as a subdivision: H 1855 (4, 13-18)

-Texts: H 2190 (3)

Local history: H 1845

Headings requiring [*place*]-[*topic*] as an additional heading: H 1845 (3)

Subdivisions under place names for local history materials: H 1845 (1)

Local subdivision of subject headings

SEE Geographic subdivisions

Locks (Hydraulic engineering)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Locomotives

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

London, England:

Buildings and structures in: H 1334 (5)

Longitudinal studies as a subdivision: H 1848

- M -

Macedonia (Republic): H 1055

Machine translating as a subdivision: H 2219 (2)

Malay as an adjective: H 987 (1-2)

Malaya: H 987

Malayan as an adjective: H 987 (2)

Malaysia: H 987

Qualification of geographic headings: H 810 (1)

Abbreviations of states: H 810 (9)

Malaysian as an adjective: H 987 (2)

Manners and customs: H 2057

Manors

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Mansions

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Manuals, Amateurs'

SEE **Amateurs' manuals** as a subdivision

Manuscript collections: H 1855 (8, 19-21)

Catalogs: H 1361 (4-6)

Manuscript illuminators: H 1855 (9)

Manuscripts, Facsimile editions of

SEE Facsimiles of manuscripts

Manuscripts, Illumination of

SEE Illumination of manuscripts

Manuscripts, Individual: H 1855

Text with important illustrations: H 1855 (15-18)

Manuscripts, Music: H 1595 (2)

Map collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Maps: H 1865

-**Early works to 1800:** H 1576 (1)

Facsimiles: H 1595 (2)

MARC tagging

Subject authority records: H 200

Market buildings

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Marketing as a subdivision: H 1870

Markets

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Mary, Blessed Virgin, Saint

Established subdivisions vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1110 (2)

Mass media

-**Reviews:** H 2021 (2)

Massacres

Formulating headings: H 1592

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

Materials

Pattern heading: H 1158

(*May Subd Geog*)

SEE Geographic subdivisions

Medals: H 1265

Medical statistics: H 2095 (1-2)

Medicine, Popular: H 1943.5 (1)

Medieval cities

SEE Extinct cities (pre-1500)

Medieval legends

SEE **Legends**

Legends as a subdivision

Medium of performance of musical works: H 250 (1-3, 5-9), H 1916.3 (3-4), **H 1917.5**, H 1918 (6-9)

Headings governed by patterns: H 250 (7-11)

Meetings

SEE Congresses

Mental health as a subdivision: H 1890 (1)

Mental health services as a subdivision: H 1890 (2)

Mergers of two or more jurisdictions into one: H 710

Metals

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1158

Methodology as a subdivision

Forecasting: H 1628 (1-2)

Genealogy: H 1631 (2)

Methods as a subdivision: H 1161 (2)

[. . .] **Metropolitan Area**: H 362 (1), **H 790** (1-3), H 1140 (6)

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)

Microform catalogs: H 1361 (3-4)

Publishers' catalogs: H 1965

Microforms: H 1893

Migration, Internal: H 1581 (4)

Migration, Return: H 1581 (4)

Military engagements

Formulating headings: H 1592

Military expeditions

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Military installations, Active

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Military installations, Inactive

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Military invasions

SEE Invasions

Military occupations

Formulating headings: H 1592

Military raids

SEE Raids

Military relations as a subdivision: H 1996

Military services

Pattern headings: H 1159

Regimental histories: H 1995

Military units
 Regimental histories: H 1995
 Mine buildings
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)
 Mines
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)
 Miniature books: H 1895
 -Specimens: H 1895
 Miniature paintings of manuscripts
 SEE Illumination of manuscripts
 Mining districts
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)
 Mints
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)
Miscellanea as a subdivision: H 1910
 Model headings
 SEE Pattern headings
 Moldova: H 1023 (2-4)
 Monasteries
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)
 Monastic orders
 Adjectival qualifiers for subject headings: H 306 (1)
 -Controversial literature: H 1472 (1)
 Monastic and religious life: H 2015.5 (1)
 Pattern heading: H 1186
 Montenegro: H 1055
 Months, Special: H 1592
 Monuments: H 1334 (1)
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)
 Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1334.5 (1)
 Subject heading proposals for national monuments: H 1925
Monuments as a subdivision
 Individual persons: H 1334 (10)
 Moon
 SEE Celestial bodies
Moral and ethical aspects as a subdivision: H 1949, H 1998 (4)
 Morgues
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)
 Mosques
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)
 Motels
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Motion pictures: H 2230

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Mountain ranges

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (6)

Mountains

Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Muhammad, Prophet, d. 632

Established subdivisions vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1110 (2)

Multifaceted careers, Persons with

Biography: H 1330 (3)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110 (2-3)

Multilingual dictionaries: H 1540

Multiple subdivisions: H 1090

Religion headings: H 1998, H 2015

Subject heading proposals: H 1090 (2)

Religion headings: H 1998 (2), H 2015 (2)

Museums: H 1916

Established as name headings: H 405 (8), H 1916

Museums as a subdivision: H 1916 (1)

Music

SEE ALSO Folk music

Jazz

Popular music

Accompaniment in form/genre headings: H 250 (8-9), H 1917.5 (10, 13, 15, 21-22, 24-25, 27, 31, 34-38)

Authority records: H 250, H 1917.5 (5-8, 10-12, 14-16, 18, 21-23, 28-30, 33, 37)

By individual composers: H 1438

Common concepts in subject headings: H 1916.3 (2-9)

Dance music headings: H 250 (5)

Ethnic, national, and religious groups: H 1917

For occasions (religious seasons, holidays, festivals, etc.): H 1160 (5), H 1916.3 (2, 4)

Form/genre headings: H 250, H 1160, H 1916.3 (3), **H 1917.5**

General: H 1916.3

Headings governed by patterns: H 250 (7-11)

-Instruction and study: H 1160 (8), H 2110 (3)

Instructional materials: H 1916.3 (3, 7), H 1918 (9-10)

Inverted headings: H 306 (4)

Literature and other materials about: H 1160 (3-4), H 1161, H 1916.3 (6-8), H 1917, H 1918 (9-10)

Medium of performance in headings: H 250 (1-3, 5-9), H 1916.3 (3-4), **H 1917.5**, H 1918 (6-9)

Music (*Continued*)

Pattern headings

For free floating subdivisions

Musical compositions: H 1160, H 2075, H 2190 (2)

Musical instruments: H 250 (9, 11), H 1161

For musical compositions: H 250 (7-11)

Qualifiers for music headings: H 250 (3-5, 10-11), H 306 (4), H 1917.5 (11-17, 24-25, 29-35, 37-38)

Subject heading assignment: H 250 (5), H 1160, H 1161, H 1438 (2), H 1916.3 (3-9), H 1917 (1-5), H 1917.5 (9, 11, 21-22, 24-25, 27-38), H 1918 (6-10), H 2075, H 2190 (2)

Subject heading proposals: H 250 (1-6), H 1917.5 (5-8, 10-12, 14-16, 22-24, 28, 37), H 1918

Music, Folk

SEE Folk music

Music, Popular: H 1916.5

Music, Vocal

SEE Vocal music headings

Music and songs

SEE **Songs and music** as a subdivision: H 2075

Music and the war [revolution, etc.] as a subdivision: H 2075 (4)

(Music) as a qualifier: H 250 (5), H 1916.3 (5), H 1918 (3, 6)

Music as a subdivision: H 1917 (1-2)

Music halls

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Music heading authority records: H 250

SEE ALSO "Subject heading proposals" under Music

Music manuscripts: H 1595 (2)

Music of ethnic groups: H 1916.3 (2, 6), **H 1917**

Music of national groups: H 1916.3 (6), **H 1917**

Music of religious groups: H 1916.3 (6), **H 1917**

Musical compositions

SEE ALSO Folk music

Jazz

Music

Popular music

Pattern heading: H 1160

Musical format subdivisions: H 250 (9), H 1160 (6-8), H 1916.3 (3, 6)

(Musical instrument) as a qualifier: H 1918 (3, 7)

Musical instrument collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Musical instruments: H 1918

Brands and models: H 1918 (8-10)

-Catalogs and collections: H 1360 (3), H 1427 (2)

Classification numbers in subject authority records: H 365 (2), H 1918 (5)

Ethnic and national: H 1917 (1, 5)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1161

In music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (5-17, 20, 24)

Keyboard: H 1917.5 (9-10, 12-15, 21, 34, 36)

Non-musical objects used as: H 1918 (6)

Number of the same solo instrument in music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (10-17)

Order, in music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (9-10, 27, 31, 35)

Parts of instruments and accessories: H 1918 (6)

Pattern heading: H 1161

Percussion: H 1917.5 (9, 16-17, 22)

Qualifiers: H 1917.5 (3-6, 15-16), H 1918 (3, 6-8)

Subject heading assignment: H 1917 (1-5), H 1918 (6-10)

Subject heading proposals: H 250 (9-10), H 1917.5 (5-7, 10-12, 14-16, 22-24, 28, 30, 33, 37), H 1918

Unspecified: H 1917.5 (9-10, 15)

Musical presentation subdivisions: H 250 (9), H 1160 (5-7), H 1916.3 (3, 6)

Musical settings as a subdivision: H 1160 (3, 6), H 2075 (1)

Musical style: H 250 (1-3), H 1160 (5), H 1161 (2), H 1916.3 (5), H 1916.5 (1-2), H 1917 (1, 3)

Qualifiers for subject headings: H 306 (3)

Musicians

Composers: H 1438

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110

Muslim as an adjective: H 1680

Mutinies

Formulating headings: H 1592

Mythological characters: H 1795 (2)

Mythology as a subdivision: H 1998 (4)

- N -

Name as a subdivision: H 1919 (1)

Name authority record proposals made by subject catalogers

SEE Proposals for name authority records made by subject catalogers

Name authority records

SEE ALSO Name headings

AACR2 coding: H 405 (3-4), H 430 (1-2)

Categories of headings established as name or subject headings: H 405

Name authority records (*Continued*)

Citing name authority records in subject authority records: H 203 (4)

Corporate bodies

Dividing by place: H 364 (5), **H 475**

Name changes: H 460

Provisional, Name headings coded: H 436

Requests by subject catalogers for name authority records: H 405 (3)

"Subj Cat Manual/AACR2" notation: H 405 (4)

Subject usage information: H 432, H 708

Geographic subdivision information: H 835

Validity of headings for subject use: H 430

Name changes

Corporate bodies: H 460

Political jurisdictions: H 708 (1), H 830 (4)

Name headings

SEE ALSO Geographic name headings

Name authority records

Abbreviations: Appendix A

Capitalization: Appendix B (1)

Diacritics and special characters: Appendix C (1)

Categories of headings established as name or subject headings: H 405

"General see also" references to types of name headings: H 371 (2, 4)

Name changes

Corporate bodies: H 460

Political jurisdictions: H 708 (1), H 830 (4)

Punctuation: Appendix D (3-4)

Requests by subject catalogers for name authority records: H 405 (3)

Validity for subject use: H 430

Name headings, Provisional: H 436

Name-title subject headings

SEE ALSO Uniform titles as subject headings

Commentaries: H 1435 (2-3)

Composers and works about music of individual composers: H 1438 (2)

-History not used: H 1647 (2)

-Indexes: H 1670 (2-3)

Named entities

Buildings and structures: H 1334

Established as name or subject headings: H 405

Events: H 1592

Geographic entities: H 690

Parks: H 1925

-Songs and music: H 1160 (3, 6), H 1916.3 (4), **H 2075**

Named entities (*Continued*)

Street and roads: H 2098

Strikes and lockouts: H 2100

Names, Biological

SEE Biological names

Names, Family

SEE Family names

Names, Geographical: H 1630

SEE ALSO Geographic name headings

Geographic subject headings

Names, Personal

SEE Names of persons

Names as a subdivision: H 1919

Names of corporate bodies

SEE Corporate bodies

Geographic name headings

Name headings

Names of families

SEE Family names

Names of legislative acts: H 1715

Names of persons

SEE ALSO Correspondence of individual persons

Name authority records

Name headings

Literary authors, Individual

Assignment as subject heading: H 1110 (1)

Bibliographies: H 1322

Biography: H 1330

Assignment as subject heading to non-biographical works: H 1330 (5)

Drama: H 1780 (3)

Fiction: H 1790 (4)

Music: H 1438, H 1916.3 (4), H 2075

Poetry: H 1800 (3)

Composers and works about music of individual composers: H 1438

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110

Persons with multifaceted careers: H 1110 (2-3)

-History-Chronology: H 1367 (2)

-Museums: H 1916 (2)

Named events focused on an individual person: H 1592 (6)

Pictorial works: H 1935 (2)

-Sources: H 2080 (3)

Names of places

SEE ALSO Geographic name headings
Geographic subject headings

Dictionaries (Gazetteers): H 1630

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140

Narrower terms

Changing references: H 195 (1-2)

Procedure for making: H 200 (7)

NARS

SEE Name authority records

National monuments

SEE Monuments

National parks: H 1925 (2-4)

Nationalities: H 1919.5

Folklore: H 1627 (2-3, 7)

-Foreign countries: H 1919.5 (2, 4)

Free-floating subdivisions under: **H 1103**, H 1919.5 (2)

Free-floating subdivisions under headings for classes of persons with national
qualifiers: H 1100

Qualifiers for subject headings: H 320, H 350

National and ethnic qualifiers not used for headings in the field of music: H 1917 (4)

Subject heading proposals: H 1919.5 (1)

Nationalities, Music of

SEE Music of national groups

Nationalities in the United States

SEE Ethnic groups in the United States

Nationality qualifiers for subject headings: H 306 (2), H 320, H 350

Not used for headings in the field of music: H 1917 (4)

Native Americans

SEE Indians

Natural disasters

SEE Disasters

specific types of disasters

Natural features in cities

Qualifying subject headings: H 810 (5)

Natural history collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Natural language

Topical subject headings: H 306

Natural objects

-Catalogs and collections: H 1360 (3), H 1427 (2)

Nature conservation areas

SEE Parks

Nature of work/nature of contents codes in field 008
 Books: Appendix F (1)
 Continuing resources (Serials): Appendix G (1)

New subject heading proposals
SEE Subject heading proposals

New York (N.Y.): H 990
 City sections, boroughs, counties: H 990 (2)
 Metropolitan Area: H 362 (1), H 790 (1,3), H 990 (1)
 Region: H 790 (4)

New Zealand
 Abbreviation as a geographic qualifier: H 810 (11)

Newspapers
 -**Directories:** H 1558 (4)
 -**Sections, columns, etc.-Reviews:** H 2021 (2)

Newspapers as a subdivision: H 1920
 Newspapers about specific places: H 1920 (1)
 Newspapers of ethnic groups in the United States: H 1920
 Newspapers of Indians of the United States: H 1920 (2)
 Newspapers on special topics: H 1920

Night clubs
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Noble houses
 Subject heading proposals: H 1574 (4)

Non-English languages
SEE Foreign languages, Subject headings in
 Foreign languages, Subject headings for

Non-fiction films: H 1913 (1)
 Non-fiction radio programs: H 1969.5 (1)
 Non-fiction television programs: H 1913 (1)

Non-free-floating subdivisions
SEE Subdivisions

Non-jurisdictional corporate body headings
SEE Corporate bodies

Non-jurisdictional geographic headings
SEE Geographic subject headings

Non-jurisdictional islands
SEE Islands

Non-music sound recordings: H 2230
 Non-Roman Arabic/Persian subject headings: H 181
 Non-Roman CJK subject headings: H 182
 "Nonprint" headings: H 1332 (5)

Northern, Southern, Central, etc., as a qualifiers:

Headings for regions: H 760 (4, 5)

Northern Ireland

Geographic subdivision: H 955 (1)

Law cataloging: H 955 (2-3)

(Not Subd Geog)

Coding headings: H 364 (2-4)

NTs

SEE Narrower terms

Number of choral parts in chorus music headings: H 1917.5 (34)

Number of solo vocal parts in music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (29-31)

Number of the same instrument in music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (11, 14-17)

Numerals

Abbreviations: Appendix A (6-7)

Numeric tags: H 200

Numismatic collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Nursery rhymes: H 1800 (2)

Literary genre vs. folklore genre: H 1627 (4)

Nursing homes

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

- O -

Observatories

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Occupational groups

Folklore: H 1627 (3)

-Education: H 2217 (2)

-Professional ethics: H 1949

-Training of: H 2217 (1-2)

Occupations

Formulating headings: H 1592

Ocean currents

Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Oceans

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5

Office buildings

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Official residences

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Old age homes
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Old Catalog headings
 Citing in subject authority records: H 203 (5)

On postage stamps as a subdivision: H 1945

Online subject authority records
 SEE Subject authority records

Opera houses
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Operas
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1160
 -History and criticism not used: H 1160 (4)

Order of instruments in music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (9-10, 27)

Order of subdivisions in a subject heading string: H 1075 (4-6)

Order of subject headings: H 80

Orders, Monastic
 SEE Monastic orders

Orders, Religious
 SEE Religious orders

Ordinal numerals
 SEE Numerals

Organizations
 SEE Corporate bodies

Organs as a subdivision
 Musical instruments: H 1918 (4)

Organs of the body
 Pattern heading: H 1164

"Orphan" subject headings: H 370 (3-4)

Orphanages
 Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

"OSER" file
 SEE "MAGS" file

- P -

Pageants
 Established as name headings: H 1592 (2)

Palaces
 SEE ALSO Buildings and structures
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Palestine: H 980 (2)

Palestinian National Authority: H 980 (3)

Parades

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Parenthetical qualifiers in subject headings: H 357

Music: H 250 (3, 5, 10-11), H 1916.3 (3-5), H 1916.5 (1), H 1917.5

Musical instruments: H 1161 (2), H 1918 (2, 6-8)

Park districts

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Parks: H 1925

SEE ALSO City parks

National parks

As geographic subdivisions: H 830 (4), H 1925 (6)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14), H 690 (1)

Subject heading proposals: H 1925 (2-5)

Use of vernacular: H 1925 (2)

Parks (Administrative agencies)

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Partial biography: H 1330 (5)

Partial title added entries: **H 150**

Named collections of objects: H 1427 (3)

Participation, [. . .] as a subdivision: H 1200 (1-2)

Parts of the body

Singular vs. plural: H 285 (1)

Pattern headings: H 1146

SEE ALSO specific pattern headings

As examples in "General see also" references: **H 371** (9), H 1146 (1, 2)

Establishing new subdivisions under: H 1146 (2-3)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1147-H 1200

Music headings governed by: H 250 (7-11)

Pavilions

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Peoples, Ancient

SEE Ancient peoples

People's Republic of China

SEE China

Performing arts

SEE ALSO Drama

Music

-Reviews: H 2021 (2)

Period subdivisions

SEE Chronological subdivisions

Periodicals as a subdivision: H 1927, H 2060

Form subdivisions not further subdivided by **-Periodicals**: H 1927 (2)

Periodicals, Bibliographies of: H 1927 (2)

Periodicals, Catalogs of: H 1361 (1)

Periodicals, Electronic: H 1580.5

Persian subject headings (Non-Roman): H 181

Personal correspondence

SEE Correspondence of individual persons

Personal names

SEE Names of persons

Personal narratives as a subdivision: H 1480 (2), H 1538 (2), H 1928

Persons, Classes of

SEE Classes of persons

Persons, Names of

SEE Names of persons

Pets

Biography: H 1720

Philosophers

-Philosophy not used under names of individual philosophers: H 1929

Philosophy headings

Usage of **-History** under: H 1647 (5)

Photograph collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Photographs as a subdivision: H 1935 (3)

Photographs from space as a subdivision: H 1210.5 (2)

Photography: H 1935 (2)

Photography, Aerial: H 1210.5

Photography, Artistic: H 1255

Photography, Portrait: H 1255 (2)

Photography, Space: H 1210.5 (2)

Phrase headings

SEE ALSO [. . .] and [. . .] headings

Free-floating terms and phrases

[. . .] in [. . .] headings

Broader terms: H 370 (6-9)

Phrase headings vs. subdivisions

[. . .] and [. . .] headings: H 310

Established phrase headings vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1095 (2)

Piano

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1161

Pictorial works as a subdivision: H 1935

Picture dictionaries: H 1540 (4)

Pipelines

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Place names

SEE ALSO Geographic name headings

Geographic subject headings

Biography: H 1330 (4)

Dictionaries (Gazetteers)

SEE Gazetteers

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140

Local history and genealogical source material: H 1845

Newspapers: H 1920 (1)

Used as topical subdivisions

Subfield coding: H 830 (10)

Plains

Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Planetariums

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Planets

SEE Celestial bodies

Planned communities

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Plans (Programs)

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Plants

SEE ALSO Domestic plants

Assigning classification numbers: H 1332 (5)

Establishing biological names: H 1332 (1-6)

Headings previously unprinted in *Library of Congress Subject Headings*: H 1332 (5)

Geographic subdivision allowed at any taxonomic level: H 1332 (5)

Pattern heading: H 1180

Subject heading proposals: H 1332

Playgrounds

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Plays

SEE Drama

Plays, Children's

SEE Juvenile drama

Plazas: H 1334 (1)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Plural vs. singular form of subject headings: H 285

Animals: H 1332 (2)

[...] as [...] headings: H 360

Plural vs. singular form of subject headings (*Continued*)

Musical compositions: H 250 (1), H 1160 (3-4), H 1917.5 (8)

Musical instruments: H 250 (9-10), H 1917.5 (8), H 1918 (1-3, 6-7)

Parts of the body: H 285 (1)

Plants: H 1332 (2)

Products: H 285 (1)

Poetry: H 1800

Poetry, Children's

SEE Juvenile poetry

Poetry, Folk

SEE Folk poetry

Poetry as a subdivision: H 1800 (1)

Fictitious characters: H 1610 (2)

Place names: H 910 (2)

Poets

SEE Literary authors, Groups

Literary authors, Individual

Police stations

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Political activity as a subdivision: H 1942 (3)

Political aspects as a subdivision: H 1942 (3)

Political divisions of countries

SEE Geographic name headings—First order political divisions of countries

Political history

SEE **Politics and government** as a subdivision

Political incidents

Formulating headings: H 1592

Political jurisdictions

SEE Geographic name headings

Political participation: H 1942 (3)

Political science: H 1942 (1)

Politicians

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110

Politics, Practical: H 1942 (3)

Politics and government as a subdivision: H 1942

Polyglot dictionaries: H 1540 (2-4)

Pools, Public

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Poorhouses

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Popular music: H 1916.5

Popular works as a subdivision: H 1943.5

Port authorities

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Portals as building details

SEE Building details

Portrait photography: H 1255 (2)

Portraits as a subdivision: H 1935 (2)

Ports

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Possessions

SEE **Territories and possessions** as a subdivision

Post offices

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Postage stamps on specific topics: H 1945

Poster collections: H 1945.5 (3)

Poster collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Posters: H 1945.5

Qualifying by nationalities: H 1945.5 (2)

Posters, Travel

SEE Travel posters

Posters as a subdivision: H 1945.5

Posthouses

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Power plants

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Preaching: H 2032 (4)

Prehistoric periods and cultures: H 1225 (2)

Prepositional phrase headings

SEE Phrase headings

Presidential mansions

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Presidents

SEE Rulers and statesmen

Princes: H 1574 (2)

Princesses: H 1574 (2)

Prisons

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Private book collections

SEE **Library** as a subdivision

Private collections: H 1427 (2-4)

Private collections as a subdivision: H 1360 (3), H 1427

Use of geographic subdivision for location of collection: H 1427 (1)

Prizes: H 1265

Products

Singular vs. plural: H 285 (1)

Professional ethics: H 1949

Professional ethics as a subdivision: H 1949

Programs (Plans)

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Programs, Computer

SEE Computer programs, Individual

Projects

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Proper names

SEE Name headings

Proposals for name authority records made by subject catalogers

Adding 781 fields: H 835 (2-3)

Dividing corporate name headings geographically: H 475

Proposals for subject headings

SEE Subject heading proposals

"Subject heading proposals" as a subtopic under specific topics

Proverbs

Literary genre vs. folklore genre: H 1627 (4)

Provinces as a subdivision: H 713

Provisional name headings: H 436

Provisional subject headings: H 1334 (2)

Psychological testing as a subdivision: H 2186

Public buildings

Broader terms: H 1334 (7)

Public celebrations

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Public comfort stations

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Public opinion as a subdivision: H 1955

Public pools

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Publishers' catalogs: H 1965

Publishers' imprints

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Pueblos

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Puerto Rico

Abbreviation as geographic qualifier: H 810 (11)

Punctuation: Appendix D

Headings using free-floating terms and phrases: H 362 (3)

Music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (26)

[. . .] **Region** headings: H 362 (3), H 760 (1)

Purges

Formulating headings: H 1592

- Q -

Qualifiers, Geographic

SEE Geographic qualifiers

Qualifiers, Parenthetical, in subject headings

SEE Parenthetical qualifiers in subject headings

Qualifiers, Subject heading

SEE Subject heading qualifiers

Quarters of cities: H 720

Established as name headings: H 405 (5), H 720 (1)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140

Geographic subdivision: H 720 (2), **H 830 (4)**

Queens: H 1574 (2)

Questions and answers: H 1910

Quotations as a subdivision: H 1969

Quotations, maxims, etc. as a subdivision: H 1969

- R -

Races (Contests)

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Racetracks

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Radio genre/form headings: H 1969.5

Radio programs

Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Raids

Formulating headings: H 1592

Railroads: H 1970

Established as name headings: H 405 (9), H 1970 (1)

Railway stations
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Ranches
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Readers: H 1975

Readers as a subdivision: H 1975

Reading films, Juvenile
 SEE Juvenile films

Reading interests: H 1333

Recipes: H 1475

Recordings, Catalogs of
 SEE **Audiotape catalogs** as a subdivision
 Discography as a subdivision
 Film catalogs as a subdivision

Recordings, Juvenile sound
 SEE Juvenile sound recordings

Recreation areas
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Recreation districts
 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Recruiting, enlistment, etc. as a subdivision
 Subdividing by wars: H 1159 (2)

Reference books: H 1980
 Bibliographies: H 1980 (2-3)

References
 SEE Broader terms
 Narrower terms
 Related terms
 "Used for" references

Referrals to descriptive catalogers
 Requests to have named entities established: H 405 (3)

Refugee camps
 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Regimental histories as a subdivision: H 1995

Regions, Geographic
 City regions: H 362 (2), **H 790** (1, 4)
 Extinct cities: H 715 (3); H 760 (1)
 Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)
 Constructing headings with the free-floating term [. . .] **Region:** H 362 (2-3), **H 760**
 Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140
 Geographic subdivision: H 830 (6)

Regions, Geographic (*Continued*)

Regions based on international organizations: H 760 (4)

Regions based on rivers: H 362 (2), **H 800** (8), H 1145.5 (2)

Regions as a subdivision: H 713

Regions of the body

Pattern heading: H 1164

Registers of births, etc.: H 1631 (2), H 1845 (2)

Reigns

Formulating headings: H 1592

Related terms: H 370 (10-12)

Changing references: H 195 (1-2)

Keying in subject authority records: H 200 (6-7, 16)

Moving image genre/form headings: H 1913 (4)

Radio genre/form headings: H 1969.5 (3)

Relations as a subdivision: H 1996

Relationships between two topics

[...] and [...] headings: H 310

Religion as a subdivision: H 1997

-Religion-History not used: H 1997 (1, 2)

Religions: H 1998, H 2015

-Apologetic works: H 1472 (1)

As subdivisions under **-Religions aspects:** H 1998 (2)

As subdivisions under topical headings: H 2015 (2)

Civilization: H 1370 (2)

-Controversial literature: H 1472 (1)

Corporate body headings established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Founders of

Biography: H 1330 (4)

Established subdivisions vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1110 (2)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110

Subdivisions for events focused on: H 1592 (6)

-Liturgy-Texts: H 2190 (3)

Pattern heading: H 1185

-Rituals-Texts: H 2190 (3)

Religious aspects as a subdivision: H 1998

Subdivided by religions and denominations: H 1998 (2-3)

Religious denominations

SEE ALSO Christian denominations

Religious sects

Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Religious education textbooks: H 2187 (2)

Religious groups

Music: H 1916.3 (6), **H 1917**

Religious life: H 2015.5

SEE ALSO **Christian life**

Religious life and customs as a subdivision: H 2016

Religious life as a subdivision: H 2015.5

Religious orders

Adjectival qualifiers for subject headings: H 306 (1)

–**Controversial literature:** H 1472 (1)

–**Monastic and religious life:** H 2015.5 (1)

Pattern heading: H 1186

Religious qualifiers for subject headings: H 306 (1)

Religious sects: H 2015 (2)

SEE ALSO Christian denominations

–**Apologetic works:** H 1472

As subdivisions under –**Religious aspects:** H 1998 (2-3)

As subdivisions under topical headings: H 2015 (2)

–**Civilization** not used: H 1370 (2)

–**Controversial literature:** H 1472 (1)

Corporate body headings established as name headings: H 405 (8)

–**Liturgy–Texts:** H 2190 (3)

Pattern heading: H 1185

–**Rituals–Texts:** H 2190 (3)

Religious works

SEE ALSO Sacred works

–**History and criticism:** H 2190 (3)

Manuscripts: H 1855 (3, 11-18)

Remote-controlled vehicles

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Republic of China

SEE Taiwan

Republics as a subdivision: H 713

Republics of the former Soviet Union: H 1023 (2-4)

Requests to descriptive catalogers to establish named entities: H 405 (3)

Research, Legal

SEE **Legal research** as a subdivision

Research as a subdivision

Research as a subdivision: H 2020

Legal materials: H 1710

Research for subject heading proposals: H 202

Research stations

Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Reservations, Indian

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Reserves

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Subject heading proposals: H 1925 (2-5)

Use of vernacular: H 1925 (2)

Reserves (Administrative agencies)

Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Reservoirs

Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5

Resorts

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Restaurants

Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Retail stores

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Retail trade

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1153

Return migration: H 1581 (4)

Reviews as a subdivision: H 2021

Revolutions

SEE ALSO Cultural revolutions

Formulating headings: H 1592

Pattern heading: H 1200

Rhymes, Nursery

SEE Nursery rhymes

Riddles

Literary genre vs. folklore genre: H 1627 (4)

Riots

Formulating headings: H 1592

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

Rituals–Texts as a subdivision: H 2190 (3)

River basins

SEE Watersheds

River deltas

SEE Deltas

River regions: H 362 (2), **H 800** (8), H 1145.5 (2)

River valleys

SEE ALSO Rivers

Valleys

Formulating headings: **H 800** (7), H 1145.5 (2)

River valleys (*Continued*)

[. . .] **Region**

Headings not constructed for regions based on river valleys: H 760 (1)

Rivers

SEE ALSO Estuaries

Forks of rivers

River regions

River valleys

Watersheds

Wild and scenic rivers

Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Free-floating region headings based on names of rivers: H 362 (2), **H 800** (8),

H 1145.5 (2)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5

Geographic subdivision: H 800 (9)

Subject heading proposals: H 800 (1-6)

Geographic qualifiers: H 800 (1-3)

References: H 800 (3-5)

Roads

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)

Subject heading proposals: H 2098

Geographic qualifiers: H 2098 (1-2)

Use of vernacular: H 690 (4), H 2098 (1)

Rockshelters

Subject heading proposals: H 1225 (4)

Roman gods

SEE Greek and Roman gods

Roman numerals

SEE Numerals

Romance languages

SEE ALSO Foreign languages, Subject headings for

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1154

Romances: H 1795

Romances, Arthurian

SEE Arthurian romances

Romances as a subdivision: H 1795 (2-3)

Romanization

Arabic/Persian subject headings: H 181

CJK subject headings: H 182

Greek and Hebrew letters in subject headings: Appendix C (4)

Romanization (*Continued*)

Topical headings established in foreign languages: H 315

UF references for geographic headings: H 690 (8)

Rooms as building details: H 1334 (1, 9)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Royal houses: H 1574

–Biography not used: H 1574 (2)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1120

Subject heading proposals: H 1574 (1-4)

RTs

SEE Related terms

Rulers and statesmen

SEE ALSO **Kings and rulers** as a subdivision

Biography: H 1330 (5)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110

Russia: H 1023 (1)

Russian as adjectival qualifier

vs. **Soviet**: H 1023 (4)

- S -

Sacred texts set to music: H 250 (2), H 1916.3 (5)

Sacred works

SEE ALSO Religious works

Translations–Sacred works

specific sacred books

Commentaries: H 1435 (3)

–Controversial literature: H 1472 (2)

–History–Chronology: H 1367 (2)

Manuscripts: H 1855 (6, 11-18)

Pattern heading: H 1188

–Textbooks: H 2187 (1)

–Translations: H 1300 (1)

–Translations into [. . .]: H 1300 (2)

Versions or translations: **H 1300**, H 1435 (3)

Safety regulations as a subdivision: H 1705

Saint

Abbreviations: Appendix A (7-8)

Family names: H 1631 (3)

Sanatoriums

Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Sanitary landfills
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Sanitation districts
 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Satellites (Moons)
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Satellites, Artificial
 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Scandals
 Formulating headings: H 1592

Scenic rivers
 SEE Wild and scenic rivers

School districts
 Established as name headings: H 450 (9)

Schools (Educational institutions)
 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Schools (Groups of people)
 Capitalization: Appendix B (8)

Schools of artists
 Capitalization: Appendix B (8)
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Scientific and technical atlases: H 1935 (3)

Scientific apparatus collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Scientific expeditions:
 Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Scope notes: H 400
 Adding to an existing heading: H 400 (4)
 Changing an existing note: H 400 (4)
 Moving image genre/form headings: H 1913 (5)
 Proposing with a new heading: H 200 (8, 17), H 400 (4)
 Radio genre/form headings: H 1969.5 (3)
 Scope notes that allow for free-floating subdivision of headings: H 1090 (1)

Scores
 Not forwarded to the Data Integrity Section when proposing new headings:
 H 250 (11)

Scotland
 Geographic subdivision: H 955 (1)
 Law cataloging: H 955 (2-3)

Sculpture: H 1250 (2)

Seas
 Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5

Sections, columns, etc.–Reviews as a subdivision: H 2021 (2)

Sects, Christian

SEE Christian denominations

Sects, Religious

SEE Religious sects

"See also" references

SEE Broader terms

Narrower terms

Related terms

"See also" references, General

SEE General see also references

"See" references

SEE "Used for" references

"See" references, General

SEE General see references

Selections

Not used in name-title subject headings for musical works: H 1438 (2)

Serbia: H 1055

Serbia and Montenegro: H 1055

Qualification of geographic headings: H 810 (1)

Serials: H 178

Serials, Electronic: H 1580.5

Sermons: H 2032

Service stations

Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Shakespeare, William, 1564-1616

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110

Shakespeare, William, 1564-1616. Hamlet

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1155.6

Ships

Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Shipyards

Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Shopping centers

Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Short films: H 1913 (2)

Shows (Exhibitions)

Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Shrines

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Sieges: H 1560 (2), H 1592 (8)

Formulating headings: H 1592

Simulation methods as a subdivision: H 2040 (1), H 2110 (4)
 Singular vs. plural form of subject headings: H 285
 Animals: H 1332 (2)
 [. . .] as [. . .] headings: H 360
 Musical compositions: H 250 (1), H 1160 (3-4), H 1917.5 (8)
 Musical instruments: H 250 (9-10), H 1917.5 (8), H 1918 (1-3, 6-7)
 Parts of the body: H 285 (1)
 Plants: H 1332 (2)
 Products: H 285 (1)
 Sites, Archaeological
 SEE Archaeological sites
 653 field for uncontrolled subject terms: H 160
Slide collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)
 Slides: H 2230
Slides as a subdivision: H 1935 (3)
 Slovenia: H 1055
Social conditions as a subdivision: H 2055
 Social history
 Definition and comparison with **Civilization**: H 1370 (1)
Social life and customs as a subdivision: H 2057
 Folklore materials: H 1627 (1)
 –**History** not used: H 2057 (1)
 Period subdivisions: H 2057 (1)
Societies and clubs as a subdivision: H 2060
Societies, etc. as a subdivision: H 2060
 Family names: H 1631 (8)
Socioeconomic status as a subdivision
 Discontinued: H 1578 (1), H 2055 (1)
Sociological aspects as a subdivision: H 2055 (1)
 Software: H 2070
 Individual computer programs established as name headings: H 405 (9)
 Juvenile software: H 1690 (3)
 Song texts
 Language: H 250 (4-5), H 1916.3 (5), H 1917 (1, 4-5)
 Without the music: H 2190 (2)
 Songs, Folk
 SEE **Folk songs**
Songs and music as a subdivision: H 1160 (3, 6), H 1916.3 (4), H 2075
 Sound recording labels
 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Sound recordings
 Jazz and popular music
 Chronological subdivisions: H 1916.5 (3)
 Non-music: H 2230
 Not forwarded to the Data Integrity Section when proposing new headings:
 H 250 (11)

Sound recordings, Non-music: H 2230

Source materials: H 2080
 SEE ALSO specific types of source materials
 Bibliographies: H 2080 (4-5)
 Catalogs: H 2080 (5)

Sources as a subdivision: H 1480 (2), **H 2080**
 Government publications: H 1643 (2)

Southern, Central, Northern, etc., as qualifiers:
 Headings for regions: H 760 (4, 5)

Sovereignities, Territorial
 SEE Territorial sovereignties

Soviet as adjectival qualifier
 vs. **Russian**: H 1023 (4)

Soviet republics, Former: H 1023 (2-4)

Soviet Union: H 1023 (1)

Space exploration: H 1564 (2)

Space photography: H 1210.5 (2)

Space vehicles
 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Spanish America
 SEE Latin America

Spas
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Special characters: Appendix C

Special days: H 1592

Special decades: H 1592

Special months: H 1592

Special weeks: H 1592

Special years: H 1592

Specifications: H 2083

Specifications as a subdivision: H 2083

Specificity of subject headings: H 180 (2)

Splits of jurisdictions into two or more entities: H 710

Sports arenas
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Sports events
 SEE ALSO specific types of sports events
 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Sports facilities
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (15)

Spouses of famous people
 Biography: H 1330 (4)

Squadrons
 Use of **-Regimental histories:** H 1995

Stadiums
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (15)

Stagecoach stations
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (15)

Stamp collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

States as a subdivision: H 713

Statesmen
 SEE Rulers and statesmen

Statistical methods as a subdivision: H 2095 (2)

Statistical services as a subdivision: H 2095 (3)

Statistics: H 2095
 Nature of work/nature of contents codes: H 2095 (3)

Statistics, Medical
 SEE Medical statistics

Statistics, Vital
 SEE Vital statistics

Statistics as a subdivision: H 2095 (1-2)

Statues
 SEE Monuments

Steppes
 Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Stock exchanges
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Stores, Retail
 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Stories as a subdivision
 Discontinued: H 1790 (2)

Storms
 Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

Straight word order
 Topical subject headings: H 306

Street addresses
 Buildings established as street addresses: H 1334 (7)

Streets

Established as subject headings: H 405 (15)

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)

Subject heading proposals: H 2098

Geographic qualifiers: H 2098 (1-2)

Use of vernacular: H 690 (4), H 2098 (1)

Strikes: H 2100

Structures

SEE Buildings and structures

Students

Qualifying by nationality: H 350 (2)

Students–Yearbooks as a subdivision: H 2400

Studies (Research projects)

Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Studies and exercises as a subdivision: H 1161 (2)

Study and teaching as a subdivision: H 2110

Area studies: H 2110 (2)

–**Activity programs**: H 2110 (4)

–**Audio-visual aids**: H 2110 (4)

–**Simulation methods**: H 2110 (4)

–**Supervision**: H 2110 (2)

Subdivision, Geographic

SEE Geographic subdivisions

Subdivision, Indirect

SEE Geographic subdivisions

Subdivisions: H 1075

SEE ALSO Chronological subdivisions

Discontinued subdivisions

Form subdivisions

Free-floating subdivisions

Geographic subdivisions

Multiple subdivisions

specific pattern headings

Abbreviated forms discontinued: Appendix A (1)

Broader terms: H 370 (4, 7-8)

Controlled by pattern headings: H 1146-H 1200

Formulating dates for specific events: H 1078

Further subdividing by place: H 860

"General see also" references: H 371 (2-8)

"General see" references: H 374 (2)

Interposing place between subject headings and topical subdivisions: H 870

Order of subdivisions: H 1075 (4-6)

Subdivisions (*Continued*)

Proposals to establish

Multiple subdivisions: H 1090 (3)

Religions: H 1998 (2), H 2015 (2)

Subdivisions having general application: H 205

Subdivisions qualified by nationality, ethnic group, language, etc.: H 320

Subdivisions under pattern headings: H 1146 (2-3)

Subdivisions vs. phrase headings

[. . .] **and** [. . .] headings: H 310

Established phrase headings vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1095 (2)

Subfield coding

Events established as subdivisions: H 1592 (6)

Geographic subdivisions: H 830 (10)

Names of places used as topical subdivisions: H 830 (10)

Subheadings as "used for" references: H 373 (3)

"Subj Cat Manual/AACR2" notation in name authority records: H 405 (4)

Subject authority records: H 40

Changing existing records: H 193

Adding (*May Subd Geog*): H 194, H 250 (11)

Changing classification numbers: H 196

Changing references: H 195

Deleting subject authority records: H 193 (5-6), H 193.5

Characteristics of records in the file: H 40 (1)

Creating new authority records: H 200

Filling hierarchical "gaps": H 370 (5)

Headings previously unprinted in *Library of Congress Subject Headings*

Biological names: H 1332 (5)

Geographic subdivision information in 781 fields: H 836

Historical background: H 40 (1)

Status of headings: H 40 (1-2)

Tagging headings: H 200 (4)

Subject dictionaries: H 1540 (2-4)

Subject heading assignment: H 180

SEE ALSO specific topics

Editions: H 175

Latest name of jurisdictions: H 708 (1), H 830 (4)

Order of headings: H 80

Subject authority records: H 40 (2)

Subject headings identical to descriptive access points: H 184

Subject heading changes in bibliographic records: H 165

Subject heading construction: H 180 (7-8)
 Music headings: H 250 (2-11), H 1438 (2), H 1916.3 (1), H 1917.5
 Musical instruments: H 1918
 Subject heading proposals: H 200
 SEE ALSO "Subject heading proposals" as a subtopic under specific topics
 Abbreviations in subject headings: Appendix A, H 373 (2)
 Acronyms as subject headings: H 373 (2)
 Articles in the initial position in subject headings: H 290
 Authority research: H 202
 Checklist: H 202 (9)
 Broader terms and narrower terms: H 200 (6-7), H 370, H 375
 Cataloger comments accompanying proposals: H 200 (10)
 Categories of headings established as name or subject headings: H 405
 Changing existing headings
 Adding (*May Subd Geog*): H 193 (1), **H 194**
 Changing classification numbers: H 196
 Changing references: H 195
 Deleting subject authority records: H 193 (5-6), H 193.5
 Checklist for new subject heading proposals: H 200 (11)
 Citing sources: H 200 (7-8, 17), **H 203**
 Subject Cataloging Manual as a source: H 200 (9)
 Classification numbers: **H 365**
 Changing numbers associated with existing headings: H 196
 Musical instruments: H 1918 (4)
 New subject headings: H 200 (3, 15)
 Diacritics and special characters in subject headings: Appendix C
 "Gaps" in hierarchical reference structure: H 370 (5)
 LC patterns
 Criteria for citing: H 202 (1-2)
 Procedure for citing in subject authority records: H 200 (9, 18)
 Related terms: H 200 (6-7, 16), H 370 (10-12)
 Scope notes: H 400
 Subject authority records: H 200
 "Used for" references: H 200 (5-6, 15), H 373
 When to propose new subject headings H 187
 Subject heading qualifiers
 SEE ALSO Geographic qualifiers
 Language qualifiers for subject headings
 Art qualifiers: H 306 (3), H 1250 (2-6)
 Ethnic qualifiers: H 306 (2), **H 351**
 Not used with headings in the field of music: H 1917 (4)
 Language qualifiers: H 250 (4-5), H 306 (2)

Subject heading qualifiers (*Continued*)

Music headings: H 250 (3-5, 10-11), H 306 (3), H 1160 (1), H 1916.3 (3-5), H 1917 (1),
H 1917.5, H 1918 (3)

Nationality qualifiers: H 306 (2), H 320, H 350

Not used with headings in the field of music: H 1917 (4)

Parenthetical qualifiers: H 357

Music: H 250 (5, 10-11), H 1916.3 (3-5), H 1916.5 (1), H 1917.5

Musical instruments: H 1918 (2, 6-8)

Religious qualifiers: H 306 (2)

Time periods: H 306 (3)

Subject headings, Authority records for

SEE Subject authority records

Subject headings, Cancelling:

SEE Cancelling subject headings

Subject headings, Changing existing

SEE Changing existing subject headings

Subject headings in bibliographic records, Changing: H 165

Subject headings, Specificity of: H 180 (2)

Subject usage information in name authority records: H 432, H 708, H 835

Geographic subdivision information: H 835

Name changes in political jurisdictions: H 708

Subscript characters: Appendix C (3)

[. . .] **Suburban Area:** H 362 (2), **H 790** (1, 3), H 1140 (6)

Suburbs and environs as a subdivision

Discontinued: H 790 (3)

Superscript characters: Appendix C (3)

Supplements: H 2145

Surveys: H 2149

Synagogues

Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Systems of law: H 1718

- T -

Tables as a subdivision: H 2160

Tagging subject headings

Moving image genre/form headings: H 1913 (5)

Radio genre/form headings: H 1969.5 (4)

Subject authority records: H 200 (4)

Taiwan: H 925 (2)

Wade-Giles romanization used for geographic names: H 690 (6)

Tajikistan: H 1023 (2-4)

Tales: H 1627 (5, 7)
 SEE ALSO Fairy tales
 As a folklore heading: H 1627 (1, 4)
 Language qualifiers not used: H 1627 (1)

Tape recordings, Catalogs of
 SEE **Audiotape catalogs** as a subdivision

Tape recordings, Video
 SEE Video recordings

Teacher training as a subdivision: H 2217 (2)

Teachers
 -In-service training: H 2217 (2)
 -Training of: H 2217

Teaching films, Foreign language: H 2230 (2)

Technical atlases: H 1935 (3)

Telephone calls
 Citing in subject authority records: H 203 (4)

Telephone directories as a subdivision: H 1558 (4)

Television programs
 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Temples in ruins
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (15)

Temples in use
 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Terminal buildings
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (15)

Terminology as a subdivision: H 2184 (2)
 -Dictionaries not used: H 2184 (1)

Terms and phrases as a subdivision: H 1540 (1), H 2184 (1)
 -Dictionaries not used: H 2184 (1)

Territorial questions as a subdivision: H 1333.5 (2)

Territorial sovereignties
 Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)

Territories and possessions as a subdivision: H 2185
 SEE ALSO Colonies of individual countries

Terrorist attacks
 Not covered by pattern heading for wars: H 1200 (1)

Testing as a subdivision: H 2186

Textbooks: H 2187
 SEE ALSO Juvenile textbooks
 -Study and teaching not used: H 2110 (4)

Textbooks, Religious education
 SEE Religious education textbooks

Textbooks as a subdivision: H 1690 (2), **H 2187**

Textbooks for English, [French, etc.] speakers as a subdivision: H 2187 (3)

Textbooks for foreign speakers as a subdivision: H 2187 (2)

Texts as a subdivision: H 2190
 Music: H 1160 (8), H 1917 (1)

"The" in the initial position in subject headings: H 290, H 690 (6)

Theater buildings
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (15)

Theater companies
 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Theater disaster, [date] as a subdivision
 Discontinued: H 1560 (2)

Theme parks
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (15)

Themes, motives as a subdivision: H 1627 (2)

Theology as a subdivision
 Usage under **Bible**: H 1295 (2)

Theses: H 1570

Time period qualifiers for subject headings: H 306 (3)

Time periods: H 620

Title added entries, Partial
 SEE Partial title added entries

Titles of publications as subject headings: H 290, H 1435 (2-3)

Tombs
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (15)

Topical subdivisions: H 1075 (1)
 Literature about music: H 1160 (4)
 Musical instruments: H 1161

Topical subject headings
 Music: H 1160 (3), H 1916.3 (7-8)
 Tagging in subject authority records: H 200 (4)

Tornadoes
 Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

Tournaments
 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Tours as a subdivision: H 1645 (3)

Towers
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (15)

Townships in the United States
 Not used as geographic qualifiers: H 810 (5)

Trails

Established as subject headings: H 405 (15)

Subject heading proposals: H 1925 (4)

Use of vernacular: H 690 (4), H 1925 (2)

Training of as a subdivision: H 2110 (2), **H 2217**

Translating and interpreting: H 2219 (1)

Translating as a subdivision: H 2219 (1)

Sacred works: H 1300 (1)

Translating into [*name of language*] as a subdivision: H 2219 (1)

Translating services: H 2219 (2)

Translations: H 2220

Classical and ancient works: H 1412

Folk literature: H 1627 (5)

Sacred works: H 1300

Translations as a subdivision: H 2220

Translations into [*name of language*] as a subdivision: H 2220

Folk literature: H 1627 (5)

Not used under headings for music of ethnic and national groups: H 1917 (4)

Sacred works: H 1300 (2)

Transliteration

Geographic subject headings: H 690 (6)

Transportation: H 2225

Transportation as a subdivision: H 2225 (2)

Travel posters: H 1945.5 (3)

Treaties: H 2227

Established as name headings: H 2227 (1)

Treaties as a subdivision: H 2227 (1)

Trials: H 2228

Formulating headings: H 2228 (4-5)

Trials, litigation, etc. as a subdivision: H 2228 (2-4)

Tribes (Ethnic groups)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (15)

Tribes (Legal entities)

Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Tribes, Indigenous (U.S.)

As geographic subdivisions: H 830 (7)

Tripitaka: H 1300

Truck stops

Established as name headings: H 405 (10)

Tsunamis

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

Tuberculosis

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1150

Turkmenistan: H 1023 (2-4)

Tunnels: H 1334 (1)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (15)

Typhoons

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

- U -

U.S.A.

SEE United States

U.S.S.R.: H 1023 (1)

U.S. Newspaper Program: H 1920 (1)

U.S. states: H 713

U.S. Virgin Islands

SEE Virgin Islands of the United States

UF references

SEE "Used for" references

Ukraine: H 1023 (2-4)

Unaccompanied as a qualifier of music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (31, 34-35, 37-38)

Uncontrolled subject terms in the 653 field: H 160

Undertakers

Established as name headings: H 405 (10)

Uniform titles as subject headings

Commentaries: H 1435 (2-3)

Deleting articles in the initial position: H 290

Established as name headings: H 1435 (3)

-History not used: H 1647 (2)

Tagging headings

Subject authority records: H 200 (4)

Union catalogs: H 1361 (2)

Union lists as a subdivision: H 1361 (2)

Union territories as a subdivision: H 713

United Kingdom

SEE Great Britain

United States

Abbreviation as geographic qualifier: H 810 (11)

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (5)

Not used under [. . .] **Americans**: H 1919.5 (3)

Not used under certain popular music headings: H 1916.5 (2)

United States (*Continued*)

Qualification of geographic headings: H 810 (1)

Abbreviations of states: H 810 (9-11)

United States–History–Civil War, 1861-1865

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1200

United States. Air Force

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1159

United States. Armed Forces

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1159

United States. Army

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1159

United States. Congress

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1155

United States. Marine Corps

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1159

United States. Navy

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1159

United States Board on Geographic Names decisions

SEE BGN decisions

United States states: H 713

Universities and colleges

Established as name headings: H 405 (10)

Pattern heading for individual educational institutions: H 1151

Pattern heading for types of educational institutions: H 1151.5

Uprisings

Formulating headings: H 1592

Pattern heading: H 1200

Urban transportation: H 2225

USA

SEE United States

"Use" references

SEE "Used for references"

"Used for" references: H 373

Changing references: H 195 (1)

Contrasted with "general see" references: H 374 (1)

Entering in subject authority records: H 200 (5-6, 15)

Foreign language terms: H 373 (3)

Geographic names: H 690 (7-8)

Headings qualified by nationality, ethnic group, or language: H 320 (2), H 373 (4)

Moving image genre/form headings: H 1913 (4)

Music genre/form headings: H 250 (3-4, 6), H 1917.5 (10)

Musical instruments: H 1918 (3)

Radio genre/form headings: H 1969.5 (2)

"Used for" references (*Continued*)

Subheadings: H 373 (3)

Variant music subdivisions: H 1160 (1), H 1161 (1)

USNP

SEE U.S. Newspaper program

USSR: H 1023 (1)

Utility districts

Established as name headings: H 405 (10)

Uzbekistan: H 1023 (2-4)

- V -

Valleys

SEE ALSO River valleys

Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Formulating headings: H 800 (7)

Vatican City: H 1045

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (7), H 1045

Vedas: H 1300

Vehicles, Land

SEE Land vehicles

Vehicles, Remote-controlled

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Versions as a subdivision: H 1300 (1-2)

Video recordings: H 2230

Villas

Established as subject headings: H 405 (15)

Violin

Free-floating subdivisions used under: H 1161

Virgin Islands of the United States

Abbreviation as geographic qualifier: H 810 (11)

Geographic subdivision: H 807 (8)

Visual art

SEE Art

Visual disabilities, People with

Visual materials for: H 1913 (2)

Visual materials: H 2230

Vital statistics: H 2095 (2)

Vocal music headings

Accompaniment: H 1917.5 (36)

Chorus: H 1917.5 (32-35, 37-38)

Vocal music headings (*Continued*)

Construction: H 1917.5 (28-37)

Governed by pattern headings: H 250 (8)

-History and criticism: H 2190 (2)

Solo voices: H 1917.5 (29-31)

-Texts: H 2190 (2)

Vocational guidance as a subdivision: H 2232

Voivodeships as a subdivision: H 713

Volcanic eruptions

Formulating headings: H 1592 (5)

- W -

Wales

Geographic subdivision: H 955 (1)

Law cataloging: H 955 (2-3)

Walls: H 1334 (1)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (15)

War crime trials: H 2228 (4)

Wars

Biography: H 1330 (4)

-Casualties-Statistics: H 2095 (2)

Drama: H 1780 (4)

Fiction: H 1790 (5)

Formulating headings: H 1592

Pattern heading: H 1200

-Personal narratives: H 1928 (1)

Poetry: H 1800 (4)

-Public opinion: H 1955 (5)

-Territorial questions: H 1333.5 (2)

-Treaties: H 2227 (1)

Washington (D.C.)

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (7), H 1050

Metropolitan Area: H 362 (2), H 790 (1,3), H 1050

Region: H 790 (4)

Water districts

Established as name headings: H 405 (10)

Watersheds

Formulating headings: H 800 (7-8), H 1145.5 (2)

[. . .] Region

Headings not constructed for regions based on watersheds: H 760 (1)

Waterways

Established as subject headings: H 405 (15)

Web sites

Established as name headings: H 405 (10)

Weeks, Special: H 1592

Wells

Established as subject headings: H 405 (15)

West Bank: H 980

West Germany

SEE Germany

Wild and scenic rivers

Subject heading proposals: H 800 (6), **H 1925**

Wilderness areas: H 1925 (2)

Wildlife refuges

SEE Parks

Windows as building details: H 1334 (1, 9)

with in music form/genre headings: H 250 (8), H 1916.3 (3), H 1917.5 (21, 26-27)

Wives of famous men

Biography: H 1330 (4)

Women

SEE ALSO Wives of famous men

Biography: H 1330 (3)

Works of art, Individual

Established as name headings: H 405 (10)

World politics: H 1942 (1)

World War, 1939-1945

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1200

-Public opinion: H 1955 (5)

World Wide Web

Citing in subject authority records: H 203 (4)

- X -

"x" references

SEE "Used for" references

"xx" references

SEE Broader terms

Related terms

- Y -

Yearbooks as a subdivision

Discontinued as a general form subdivision: H 2400

Usage under **–Students**: H 2400

Years: H 620

Years, Special: H 1592

Yugoslavia: H 1055

- Z -

Zaibatsu

SEE Asian conglomerate corporations

Zoological gardens

Established as name headings: H 405 (10)